Molecular Studies of the *Escherichia coli* K5 Capsule Gene Cluster

Thesis submitted for the degree of

Doctor of Philosophy

at the University of Leicester

by

Frederick I Esumeh, BSc (BENSU), MSc (Lagos)

Department of Microbiology and Immunology

University of Leicester

December 1996

ProQuest LLC
789 East Eisenhower Parkway
P.O. Box 1346
Ann Arbor, MI 48106-1346

Acknowledgements

I am grateful to Professor Ian Roberts for his supervision of this work. I sincerely thank all the members of the Department of Microbiology and Immunology who have given me advice and assistance in the course of this work. In particular I have valued the help and support of the members of Lab 228, among them Mark Stevens, Julie Eastgate, Rowan Pearce, Chantal Petit, Anna Ostrowski, Brad Clarke, Brendan Barrette, Archie Lovatt, Mark Anderson and Gary Griffiths. I am extremely grateful to Gina Manning, Aras Kadioglu, Steve Gordon, Ben Gale, Chris Jones, Gerald Owenson, Hasan Yesilkaya, Ala Ahmed, Austin Asemota, Humphery Ehigiator, Ben Emenyeonu and Pedro Da Rocha for their unforgettable friendship. I am indebted to Gordon Rigg for making me knowledgeable in computer analysis of sequence data. My special thanks to Andrew Wallace for his ceaseless words of encouragement. Of the many friends I have made during the course of this work I would like to specially thank Dave Simpson with whom I have shared the uphill struggle of completing a PhD thesis and for being such a golden friend. I am grateful to the Commonwealth Scholarship Commission in the UK for the scholarship awarded to me. This thesis is dedicated to my family for their tireless support and encouragement.

Abstract

Molecular studies of the *Escherichia coli* K5 capsule gene cluster.

Frederick I Esumeh

Group II K antigens such as the K5 are associated with *Escherichia coli* causing serious extraintestinal infections. Genes for the production of group II capsules (*kps*) are organised into three functional regions 1, 2 and 3. The central region 2 encodes proteins involved in the biosynthesis of type specific polysaccharide. Proteins encoded by the flanking regions 1 and 3 are involved in the export of polysaccharidè across the bacterial membranes unto the cell surface. Translocation of polysaccharide across the inner membrane is mediated by two region 3 encoded proteins, KpsM and KpsT which belong to the ATP-binding cassette (ABC) superfamily of transporters. Region 1 encodes six proteins, KpsF-E-D-U-C-S. The KpsE protein was shown to localise in the inner membrane and mutants lacking the encoded protein were unable to export polysaccharide to the cell surface. To understand the export role of the KpsE, its membrane topology was determined using Tn*phoA* mutagenesis and β-lactamase fusions. The topology was confirmed by accessibility of fusion proteins to proteinase K. These results indicated that the KpsE protein adopts a type II bitopic membrane topology consisting of an N-terminus in the cytoplasm followed by a membrane spanning domain, a large periplasmic segment and a C-terminus that may be associated with the outer membrane. On the basis of structural similarity, the KpsE protein is proposed as the membrane fusion protein (MFP) component in the KpsM and T-mediated export of group II capsular polysaccharide and it is postulated to function in the late stages of export across the periplasmic space unto the cell surface. The determined membrane topology contradicts a second C-terminal transmembrane domain in the proposed model based on secondary structure predictions. This points to the importance of experimental data in the establishment of membrane topological models. In addition, the cloning and analysis of a bacteriophage-borne lyase enzyme specific for the *E. coli* K5 capsular polysaccharide is described. The activity of the K5 lyase enzyme was demonstrated *in vitro* and its applications are discussed.

Contents

List of Abbreviations

Amp	ampicillin
Amp^r	ampicillin resistance
AP	alternative pathway of complement
ATP	adenosine trinucleotide phosphate
APS	ammonium persulphate
blaM	β-lactamase
bp	base pair
CAT	chloramphenicol acetyltransferase
Cm	chloramphenicol
EDTA	ethylenedeamine-tetra acetic acid
GlcA	glucuronic acid
GlcNAc	N-acetylglucosamine
hr	hour
IPTG	isopropylthiogalactoside
kb	kilobase
kDa	kilodalton
KDO	2-keto-3-deoxymanno-octonic acid
Km	kanamycin
LPS	lipopolysaccharide
ManNAc	N-acetylmannosamine
min	minute
NeuNAc	N-acetyl neuraminic acid
orf	open reading frame
PA	phosphatidic acid
PAGE	polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis
PBS	phosphate buffer saline
PCR	polymerase chain reaction
SD	Shine Dalgarno
SDS	sodium dodecyl sulphate
SSC	saline sodium citrate
TEMED	N,N,N',N'-tetramethylethylenediamine
X-Gal	5-bromo-4-chloro-3-indonyl galactopyranoside
XP	5-bromo-4-chloro-3-indonyl phosphate

Chapter 1

Introduction

The production of an extracellular layer of polysaccharide termed capsule is a common feature of many bacteria. Encapsulated bacteria of medical importance are numerous and have been associated with serious invasive infections such septicaemia, meningitis, pneumonia and urinary tract infections. The capsule as a virulence determinant has been demonstrated in experimental models of infection in which the removal of capsule resulted in loss or reduced virulence of such bacteria. This acidic surface polymer confers on bacteria the ability to evade the various facets of the host defence, including complement-mediated bacteriolysis, uptake and killing by phagocytes. This protective function of the capsule can however be overcome with capsule-specific antibody. It is due therefore to their important role in disease and as likely vaccine candidates that capsules are being studied. In fact the enormous diversity of structure as well as the nature by which these acidic polymers are synthesised and translocated across the bacterial membranes to the cell surface present interesting problems to researchers in the field. This thesis comprises a structure-function study of the KpsE protein and an analysis of a cloned *Escherichia coli* K5 capsule-specific bacteriophage-borne lyase enzyme.

1.1 Bacterial Capsules

The major surface antigens of many Gram-negative bacteria of diverse genera are the lipopolysaccharide (LPS) and the capsular polysaccharide. The LPS or O antigens consist of lipid A covalently linked to the O-specific polysaccharide (Jann and Jann, 1987, 1990). Distinct from the O antigens are the capsular polysaccharides which are present in an extracellular envelope which may cover the O antigen. These additional antigens on the surface of bacterial outer membranes can be secreted into the surrounding medium as extracellular slime or may be organised into distinct structures termed capsules (Ørskov *et al* ., 1977, 1984; Ørskov and Ørskov, 1992).

Slime polysaccharides are usually released into the growth medium probably due to lack of anchoring structures to the bacterial outer membrane (Ørskov

et al., 1984; Whitfield and Valvano, 1993) and are easily extracted by washing. Some of the well known examples of this type of polysaccharide are the alginates produced by *Pseudomonas*, the dextrans of *Agrobacterium* and xanthan gum produced by *Xanthamonas campestis* (Sutherland, 1985). On the other hand, capsular polysaccharides exist as an hydrated gel surrounding each bacterial cell and requires a more vigorous extraction procedure by virtue of their association to the bacterial outer membrane. However, it has been noted that encapsulated bacteria do release polysaccharide into the growth medium (Hancock and Cox, 1991). Troy *et al.* (1971) reported 20% of the capsular polysaccharide of *Aerobacter aerogenes* are easily extracted by washing. The loose binding of some capsular polysaccharides to the bacterial wall is also exemplified by a precipitin halo surrounding a colony grown on serum agar (Petrie, 1932; Kaijser, 1977). Thus, the distinction between slime and capsule is somewhat arbitrary and may be of no functional significance (Boulnois and Roberts, 1990; Ørskov and Ørskov, 1990).

The concept of a bacterial capsule was derived largely from earlier light microscopic studies, where bacterial capsules were identified by negative staining with Indian ink as an exclusion zone around individual cells (Ørskov and Ørskov, 1990). The interpretation of light microscopic results is complicated and ambiguous owing to the distorting effect to capsular polysaccharide structures whenever fixation, dehydration or staining procedures are employed (Kellenberger, 1987; Bayer, 1990). This distortion effect is attributed to the high water content of capsules, which is in excess of 95% (Sutherland, 1972). However, the presence of capsule can now be established in a number of ways including serology (Ørskov and Ørskov, 1990, 1992), the use of DNA probes (Roberts *et al.*, 1986), specific bacteriophages (Gross *et al.*, 1977; Gupta *et al.*, 1985) and improved light and electron microscopy (Bayer, 1990). The diameter of capsule varies considerably ranging from 1μm to 10μm in less and highly expressed conditions respectively (Sutherland, 1977; Bayer, 1990). Capsules surround the organism totally and in a more or less even layer (Bayer, 1990). Capsules are maintained on the cell surface of Gram-negative bacteria through attachment to phospholipid (Gostschlich *et al.*, 1981; Schmidt and Jann, 1982) lipid A (Jann and Jann, 1990) or in the case of Gram-positive bacteria through linkage to peptidoglycan (Yeung and Mattingly, 1986; Sorensen *et al.*, 1990). In addition, ionic interactions may help the cell surface retention (Jann and Jann, 1990).

Capsules are acidic polymers composed of homo- or heteropolysaccharides which can be linear or branched. The repeating mono- or oligosaccharide units of the polysaccharide can be substituted with short side chains. Hence changes in substitution and component monosaccharide residues as well as the nature by which these components are linked together bring about great diversity in capsular polysaccharide. As a result, a wide variety of bacterial polysaccharides have been identified (Kenne and Lindberg, 1983). Some of these polymer types are listed in table 1.1. The components include pentoses, hexoses, heptoses, amino sugars, methylated sugars and uronic acids, and in addition, non-sugar substitutions such as phosphate, formate, ribitol, succinate, pyruvate and acetyl groups (Sutherland, 1977; Kenne and Lindberg, 1983). Also, monomers that were once thought to be unique to particular cell structures have been found in several polysaccharides. For instance, 2-keto-3-deoxymannosoctonic acid (KDO) widely considered to be solely associated with LPS is in fact a distinctive feature of several *E. coli* capsules (Jann and Jann, 1983). The sugar N-acetylneuraminic acid (NeuNAc) that occurs mainly in glycolipids and glycoproteins is a prominent feature of *E. coli* K1 and *Neisseria meningitidis* group B capsular polysaccharides (Kasper *et al.*, 1973). The occurrence of amino acids as major constituents of polysaccharides, such as threonine in the K54 antigen of *E. coli* (Hofmann *et al.*, 1985) and lysine in *Proteus mirabilis* O polysaccharide (Gromska and Mayer, 1976) is equally uncommon.

Capsular polysaccharide types do result also from differences in linkage of the repeating units. For example, the polysialic acid of *E. coli* K1 (Dewitt and Rowe, 1961; McGuire and Binckley, 1964), *N. meningitidis* group B (Bhattacharjee *et al* .,1975; Ørskov *et al* ., 1979) and *Pasturella haemolytica* A2 (Adlam *et al* ., 1987) have α(2-8) linkages, whereas α(2-9) linkages are seen in the polysialic acid of *N. meningitidis* group C (Bhattacharjee *et al* ., 1975). On the other hand, identical polysaccharides can be expressed by different bacterial species. The homopolymer of N-acetylneuraminic acid is found in both *E. coli* K1 and *N. meningitidis* group B capsules (Kaspar *et al.*, 1973) and the enterobacterial common antigen (ECA) is found in all enteric bacteria except *Erwinia chrysanthenii* (Kuhn *et al.*, 1988). The presence of identical polysaccharides in diverse bacteria does raise interesting questions concerning the evolution of polysaccharide types.

Table 1.1: Composition of some Bacterial Capsular Polysaccharide

Organism	Antigen/ Group	Repeating unit	Reference
	K30	-2)-Man-(1,3)-Gal-(1- 3 1 β-GlcA-(1,3)-Gal	Chakraborty *et al* . (1980)
	K40	4)-β-GlcA-(1,4)-α-GlcNAc-(1,6)-α-GlcNAc-(1 | CO.NH (serine)	Dengler *et al* . (1986)
E. coli	K1	-8)-α-NeuNAc-(2-	McGuire and Binckley (1964)
	K5	-4)-β-GlcA-(1,4)-α-GlcNAc-(1-	Vann *et al* . (1981)
	K10	-3)-α-Rha-(1,3)-β-Qui4NMal-(1- | OAc	Sieberth *et al* . (1993)
	K54	-3)-β-GlcA-(1,3)-α-Rha-(1- | CO.NH threonine (serine)	Hofmann *et al* . (1985)
	A	-6)-α-ManNAc-(1-PO_4 3 OAc	Bundle *et al* . (1974)
N. meningitidis	B	-8)-α-NeuNAc-(2-	Bhattacharjee *et al* . (1975)
	W 135	-6)-α-Gal-(1,4)-α-NeuNAc-(2-	Bhattacharjee *et al* . (1976)
H. influenzae	b	-3)-β-Ribf-(1,1)-Ribitol-(5-PO_4	Crisel *et al* . (1975)

Abbreviations: Gal, galactose; GlcA, glucuronic acid; GlcNAc, *N* -acetylglucosamine; Man, mannose; ManNAc, *N* -acetylmannosamine; NeuNAc, *N* -acetylneuraminic acid; OAc, *O* -acetyl group; PO_4, phosphate group; Qui4NMal, 4,6-dideoxy-4-malonylaminoglucose; Rha, rhamnose; Ribf, ribofurose.

Such is the structural diversity and relatedness of capsular polysaccharides among diverse bacterial genera that the focus will henceforth be on those of medical importance. Among this group are the capsules of *Klebsiella* species, *Streptococcus pneumoniae, Haemophilus influenzae, N. meningitidis* and *E. coli.* These organisms have been associated with serious invasive infections such as septicaemia, meningitis and urinary tract infections (Peltola, 1983; Jennings, 1990).

1.2 Functions of Bacterial Capsules

Capsules regardless of composition has been shown to affect dehydration, ionic exchange between bacteria and environment, adherence and colonisation of inert and living surfaces, infection by bacteriophages and the overall virulence of the bacterium (Costerton *et al* ., 1981, 1987).

1.2.1 Prevention of Desiccation

The capsule forms a hydrated gel at the cell surface that may prevent desiccation and thus increase the survival of the bacteria (Costerton *et al* ., 1987). This protective effect was recently amply demonstrated with the exopolysaccharide of *Pseudomonas* species (Roberson and Firestone, 1992) and the colanic acid of *E. coli* K12 (Ophir and Gutnick, 1994). Mucoid strains of *E. coli, Acinetobacter calcoaceticus* and *Erwinia stewartii* have been shown to be more resistant to drying than the isogenic non-mucoid strains (Ophir and Gutnick, 1994). In *E. coli* , the expression of genes encoding enzymes for the biosynthesis of colanic acid is increased by desiccation (Ophir and Gutnick, 1994). This apparent regulation of capsule expression by desiccation is not fully understood. A possible explanation is that desiccation increases the external osmolarity which triggers increase in capsule biosynthesis. Increased expression of the Vi polysaccharide in *Salmonella typhi* (Pickard *et al* ., 1994) and alginate biosynthesis in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (Berry *et al* ., 1989) are known to be induced by high external osmolarity.

1.2.2 Adherence to Surfaces

Capsular polysaccharides may promote adherence and colonisation of inert and living surfaces and thereby facilitate the formation of biofilms (Costerton *et al* ., 1981, 1987). This is attributed to electrostatic attraction between the polysaccharide and surfaces and the intergeneric interactions

among the microbial population that make the biofilm (Jenkinson, 1994). Electrostatic attraction may particularly benefit bacteria that inhabit oligotrophic environments since nutrients are also attracted to the cell surfaces (Costerton *et al .*, 1981). Microbial biofilms may provide the individual bacteria protection from predation by phagocytic protozoa and slime moulds and from infection by some bacteriophages (Dudman, 1977).

The ability of bacteria to colonise surfaces and form biofilms is important in the development of dental caries and has other far-reaching consequences. These include the colonisation of indwelling catheters which may lead to serious nosocomial infection in hospitalised patients and in the fouling of pipes in industrial processes (Costerton *et al .*, 1987). The formation of biofilm due to overexpression of alginate by *Pseudomonas* species within the lungs of cystic fibrosis patients is believed to present an impediment to antibiotics during treatment (Govan, 1988). Whilst the majority of capsular polysaccharides may promote adherence to surfaces, the cell surface polysaccharide of *P. mirabilis* facilitates the swarming of cells over solid surfaces by reducing friction (Gygi *et al .*, 1995).

Capsular polysaccharides may also be involved in bacterial-plant symbiotic interactions. The formation of nitrogen-fixing root nodules on leguminous plants by *Rhizobium* species involves bacterial polysaccharides (Gray and Rolfe, 1990; Noel, 1992). The major component of capsular polysaccharide of *R. meliloti* is succinoglycan and mutant strains of *R. meliloti* that do not synthesise succinoglycan do induce nodulation in alfalfa, but do not penetrate or colonise the nodule, which shows that succinoglycan is required for nodule invasion and development (Noel, 1992).

1.2.3 Virulence

There is considerable evidence that the capsular polysaccharides of both Gram-negative and Gram-positive bacteria play a vital role in virulence by conferring serum resistance and inhibiting phagocytosis (Horwitz and Silverstein, 1980; Kim *et al .*, 1986). The production of alginate by strains of *P. aeruginosa* causing lung infections is believed to be the major cause of morbidity and mortality among cystic fibrosis patients (Govan, 1988).

1.2.3.1 Resistance to Nonspecific Host Immunity

Capsular polysaccharides often confer resistance to non-specific host immunity through several mechanisms (Cross, 1990; Moxon and Kroll, 1990). During bacteria infection, complement can be activated by either the classical or alternative pathway and in both cases the final product is the activation of the membrane attack complex (MAC), which causes lysis of Gram-negative bacteria by piercing the outer membrane (Joiner, 1985; Joiner *et al* ., 1984). The classical pathway is activated by binding of cell surface components to antibodies, while the alternative pathway (AP) is important in the pre-immune state of infection when specific antibodies are absent. The AP is initiated by the non-specific binding of the serum protein C3b to the bacterial cell surface. The bound C3b is then activated by interacting with factor B to form the C3 convertase, C3bBb. This results in the deposition of more C3b and the formation of MAC (Frank *et al* ., 1987). Bacterial capsules may resist complement-mediated killing by masking underlying cell surface structures that are likely to activate the alternative pathway (Horwitz and Silverstein, 1980; Loos, 1985; Cross, 1990).

Alternatively, bound C3b can be inactivated by factor I to form iC3b, with factor H acting as a cofactor. Some capsular polysaccharides especially those containing sialic acid, including *E. coli* K1 and K9 contribute to serum resistance by acting as poor activators of the alternative pathway (Joiner *et al* ., 1984; Michalek *et al* ., 1988). This is achieved by the ability of the sialic acid containing polysaccharides to bind factor H, which breaks the amplification loop of the AP and thereby prevents the formation of MAC (Michalek *et al* ., 1988). *E. coli* causing serious invasive infections exhibit particular combinations of O and K antigens and it is thought that these polysaccharides act in concert to confer resistance to complement-mediated killing (Kim *et al* ., 1986). In addition, the capsular polysaccharides of *E. coli* K1 and K92, as well as the types b and c capsular polysaccharides of *N. meningitidis* exert their serum resistance by exhibiting low affinity for factor B which inhibits the formation of C3 convertase (Stevens *et al* ., 1978; Joiner *et al* ., 1984).

The bacterial capsule may confer protection against complement-mediated opsonophagocytosis. Phagocytes generally have receptors for antibody and complement on their surfaces, and the binding of antibody or complement to the bacterial surface (opsonisation) does promote phagocytosis (Joiner, 1985). Capsule is thought to confer resistance to complement-mediated phagocytosis through steric hindrance, whereby the capsule masks the

underlying C3b deposited on the cell surface from C3b receptors on the phagocyte. The K1 antigen is a potent inhibitor of phagocytosis and this is largely attributed to its inability to activate complement and to bind C3b efficiently (Allen *et al .*, 1987; Michalek *et al .*, 1988). In contrast, the K5 antigen does not appear to confer protection against phagocytosis (Cross *et al .*, 1986, Cross, 1990), despite the frequent isolation of the pathogenic *E. coli* K5 strain from cases of neonatal meningitis, septicaemia, pyelonephritis and urinary tract infections (Ørskov and Ørskov, 1992). The K5 serotypes involved in this infections are often associated with limited cell surface structures (O75:K5:H5, O6:K5:H1 and O18ac:K5:H$^-$), and their invasive attributes may reflect the function of other surface antigens, including the O antigen. The net negative charge and hydrophobicity conferred on the cell surface by capsular polysaccharide may also serve to inhibit interaction of phagocytes with the bacteria (Allen *et al .*, 1987; Roberts *et al .*, 1989; Cross, 1990). Highly charged K antigens tend to confer greater resistance to phagocytosis (Moxon and Kroll, 1990).

In certain bacteria, the expression of cell surface polysaccharide may be switched on or off from one generation to the next, a term referred to as phase variation (Kimura and Hansen, 1986). This has been observed with the lipopolysaccharide of *H. influenzae* type b and has been suggested as an important mechanism for the bacteria to evade immune responses (Kimura and Hansen, 1986). Phase variation has not been observed with the O and K antigens of *E. coli* (Whitfield *et al .*, 1984), although *O*-acetylation variants of the K1 polysaccharide have been observed (Ørskov *et al .*, 1979). The basis and role of the K1 variation is not known.

1.2.3.2 Resistance to Specific Host Immunity

In contrast to most polysaccharide capsules which can elicit immune responses with the development of specific antibodies (Lee, 1987; Jennings, 1990), certain capsular polysaccharides are poorly immunogenic. This is largely attributed to their similarity to particular mammalian structures (Jann *et al .*, 1992). For instance, the poly α-2,8-sialic acid found in *E. coli* K1 and group B meningococcal polysaccharides is a structure similar to the neural cell adhesion molecule, *n* -CAM in mammalian cells (Finne *et al .*, 1983); and the heteropolymer of β-1,4-linked glucoronic acid and *N* -acetylglucosamine of *E. coli* K5 is identical to the first polymeric intermediate of mammalian heparin (Vann *et al .*, 1983). Such structural mimicry by capsular polysaccharides to glycosaminoglycans found on host tissues (Finne *et al .*, 1983; Lindahl *et al .*, 1994) means that infected

individuals are unable to mount a specific immune response to bacterial strains carrying these capsules.

1.2.4 Immunogenicity

Most capsular polysaccharides are immunogenic and may be used for the generation of vaccines (Lee, 1987; Jennings, 1990). The potential of capsular polysaccharides as vaccines has been demonstrated with a number of life-treatening diseases. The vaccine against meningitis caused by *N. meningitidis* consists of the purified polysaccharides from serogroups A, C, W135 and Y, which constitute 90% of the serogroups encountered in all infections (Cadoz *et al* ., 1985). In *H. influenzae* six serological types exist and of these, the type b *H. influenzae* is the major cause of meningitis in man (Jennings, 1990) and the type b polysaccharide vaccine was shown to offer protection against infections caused by this bacterial strain (Moxon and Rappouli, 1990; Jennings *et al* ., 1993). The situation is different with the *S. pneumoniae* where 23-valent polysaccharide vaccine is needed to provide effective coverage (Jennings, 1990).

Despite the success obtained with the use of polysaccharide vaccines, their age-related immunogenicity proved a severe limitation. Infants respond very poorly to polysaccharide vaccines (Peltola *et al* ., 1977; Robbins, 1978; Jennings, 1983). Purified polysaccharides are T-cell independent antigens, only capable of inducing immune responses that are mainly of the IgM isotype which are not boostable by futher exposure (Gotschlich *et al* ., 1977). The conjugation of polysaccharides to proteins has been employed to circumvent this problem (Jennings, 1990). A wide range of antibodies of the IgG isotype that can be boosted by repeated exposures are produced by infants in response to polysaccharide-protein conjugates (Robbins and Schneerson, 1990). The effectiveness of conjugate vaccines in reducing the incidence of serious infections caused by *H. influenzae* type b has attracted its wide usage in many countries (Moxon and Rappouli, 1990). The immune response to polysaccharide vaccines may also be improved by chemical modification of the polysaccharide (Jennings *et al* ., 1993). This approach has been adopted with some success in the production of *N* -propionylated B polysaccharide-tetanus toxoid conjugate from the native polysaccharide moiety (Jennings *et al* ., 1986). Neither the replacement of the *N* -acetyl groups with *N* -proprionyl residues nor the conjugation of this product to protein affected the polysaccharide-specific IgG antibody responses to *E. coli* K1 and group B meningococci (Jennings, 1990). Thus, a promising area of study to overcome the limitations of many

polysaccharide vaccines especially with immunogenicity is the design of semi-synthetic or modified polysaccharides for use as vaccines.

In summary, it is clear that bacterial capsules play important roles in the onset and development of disease. The cloning and molecular analysis of several of the capsule gene clusters will obviously be of great benefit in the modification of capsules for therapeutic use.

1.3 *Escherichia coli* Capsular (K) Antigens

E. coli is usually a member of the normal gut flora of both humans and animals. However, it is a common cause of opportunistic infection with certain strains associated with severe and life-treatening diseases. Whilst, capsules are expressed by commensals and intestinal etiologic *E. coli* of the gastrointestinal tract, specific *E. coli* K serotypes are frequently associated with extraintestinal isolates (Jann and Jann, 1983; Ørskov *et al.*, 1984). *E. coli* has been shown to produce more than 70 chemically and serologically distinct capsular polysaccharides (Ørskov *et al.*, 1977). Individual isolates can only produce one of these polymers, expression of which is stable and switching of capsular type has not been documented (Boulnois and Roberts, 1990).

1.3 .1 Classification of *E. coli* Capsular Antigens

The capsules of *E. coli* were originally divided into two broad groups, I and II on the basis of a number of criteria, including chemical structure, size, mode of expression and chromosomal location of their genetic determinants (Jann and Jann, 1987). The existence of a third group of capsular antigens, designated group I/II (Finke *et al* ., 1990) or group III (Pearce and Roberts, 1995) has now been demonstrated.

1.3.1.1 Group I Capsules

The expression of group I capsular polysaccharides is restricted to *E. coli* serotypes O8, O9 and occasionally O20 and O101 (Jann and Jann, 1990). In general, group I capsules are more stable to heating at 100°C and belong to the low electrophoretic mobility capsular type (Jann and Jann, 1983). Group I polysaccharides have low charge density, high molecular weight and are expressed at all growth temperature (Table 1.2) (Jann and Jann, 1983; 1990).

They are composed mainly of glucuronic acid, galacturonic acid and their ketosidic-pyruvate substitutions. Certain group I capsules have amino sugars as structural compositions and on this basis they have been further divided into groups Ia and Ib, depending on the absence or presence of amino sugars in their structure (Jann and Jann, 1987, 1992). Group Ia K antigens do not contain amino sugars, and they resemble the K antigens found in *Klebsiella* species. For example, the *E. coli* K28 and K55 antigens are respectively identical to the K54 and K5 antigens of *Klebsiella* (Jann and Jann, 1992). Group Ia K antigens show some similarities in structure to colanic acid and the genes for the biosynthesis of colanic acid (*cps*) and group Ia K antigens are allelic (Keenleyside *et al* ., 1992). It is important to note that colanic acid is loosely associated with the cell surface and therefore should be termed a slime polysaccharide. Group Ib K antigens contain amino sugars and have no counterparts in other bacteria. Strains expressing group Ib capsular polysaccharide are also able to express colanic acid (Keenleyside *et al* ., 1992).

Group I capsular antigens are thought to be attached to the cell surface by core-lipid A and therefore resemble LPS (Jann *et al* ., 1992). It is now known that core-lipid A is not a universal feature of group I K antigens and has been found not to be essential for the surface expression of the K30 polysaccharide (MacLachlan *et al* ., 1993). Analysis of the size of the *E. coli* K30 antigen has revealed a polysaccharide of primarily high molecular weight that consists of one repeat unit unlinked to core-lipid A (MacLachlan *et al* ., 1993). In addition, *E. coli* K30 mutants with truncated lipid A core (*rfa* mutants) still make wild-type capsule as seen on electron microscopy (MacLachlan *et al* ., 1993). This implies that the cell surface expression of such capsules is independent of core-lipid A and such K antigens may be associated at the cell surface through ionic interactions with other attached molecules. For the *E. coli* K40 group Ib antigen, both low and high molecular weight polysaccharide chains exist. The majority of the capsular polysaccharide exists as high molecular weight species that are linked to lipid A-core which is typical of the LPS molecule (Dodgson *et al* ., 1996). Apart from core-lipid A attachment, the effect of the *rol* gene product on the expression of group Ib K antigens suggests that the group Ib K antigens should be considered as O antigens. The *rol* gene product modulates the chain length of heteropolymeric LPS O antigens in a number of Enterobacteriaceae (Batchelor *et al* ., 1992; Bastin *et al* ., 1993; Morona *et al* ., 1995). The *rol* gene is present on the chromosome of group Ib K antigen expressing strains, and the introduction of a multicopy *rol* gene was shown to modulate the chain length of the K40 (group Ib) K antigen in a manner identical to the Rol-

dependent O antigen (Dodgson *et al* ., 1996). In the past, strains expressing the group Ib K antigens have been said to possess two O antigens, one acidic (K antigen) and the other neutral (LPS) (Ørskov *et al* ., 1977; Jann and Jann, 1990).

The genetic determinants for group I capsules have been shown to map at 44 minutes on the *E. coli* chromosome near the *his* and *rfb* loci (Ørskov *et al* ., 1977). Studies using the K27 antigen indicate that a second *trp* -linked (*rfc*) locus is necessary for surface expression of a complete capsule, although this is not seen in the K30 antigen (Schmidt *et al* ., 1977; Laasko *et al* ., 1988) and has not been demonstrated in other group Ia K antigen expressing strains. The genes for the biosynthesis of group Ib capsular antigens have been assumed to be located at the same *his* and *rfb* loci, but this has not been shown.

1.3.1.2 Group II Capsules

Unlike the group I capsule, group II capsular polysaccharides have a high charge density and are not expressed at growth temperature below 20°C (Ørskov *et al.*, 1984; Jann and Jann, 1987). Group II K antigens are heat-labile, usually released from the cell during heating at 100° C. This has been attributed to the labile linkage nature between the group II polysaccharide and its anchor in the outer membrane (Jann and Jann, 1983). Group II polysaccharides are associated with phosphatidic acid at their reducing termini, and this substitution is thought to serve as a membrane anchor (Schmidt and Jann, 1982; Jann and Jann, 1990). They are of low molecular weight and thus belong to the high electrophoretic mobility group. This group of polysaccharides are co-expressed with many O antigens, excluding those associated with group I (Jann and Jann, 1987). Group II polysaccharides may contain hexuronic acids, *N* -acetylneuraminic acid, or KDO as their acidic components (Jann and Jann, 1987). An important distinguishing factor of group II capsule expressing strains is the high levels of CMP-KDO synthetase (CKS) activity shown at capsule permissive temperature (Schmidt and Jann,1982; Finke *et al.*, 1989). Genetic determinants for the expression of group II capsules have been shown to map at 64 minutes near *serA* on the *E. coli* chromosome (Ørskov *et al.*, 1976; Vimr, 1991) and are termed *kps* (Silver *et al.*, 1984; Vimr *et al.*, 1989). These distinction between groups I and II are summarised in table 1.2. In many respect, the group II K antigens are very similar to capsular polysaccharides of *N. meningitidis* and *H. influenzae* (Jann and Jann, 1987; 1990). This is quite evident in the

serological cross-reactivities of the respective encapsulated strains (Robbins *et al.*, 1974; Ørskov and Ørskov, 1990).

1.3.1.3 Group III Capsules

The *serA* locus was originally thought to encode a distinct group II capsule gene cluster. Recent studies has shown that some capsules previously assigned as members of group II possess features of group I (Finke *et al.*, 1990; Boulnois *et al.*, 1992; Drake *et al.*, 1993). These capsular antigens include the K2, K3, K10, K11, K19, K54 and K98. It has been shown for the K3, K10, K11, K54 and K98 antigens that despite mapping near *serA* they are expressed at all growth temperatures (Ørskov *et al.*, 1984). In addition, the K2, K3, K10, K11, K19 and K54 antigen-expressing strains do not have the elevated CKS activity at 37°C characteristic of group II capsule-producing strains (Finke *et al.*, 1990). These former group II capsules were tentatively classed as group I/II (Finke *et al.*, 1990). It should be noted, however that this classification does nothing to distinguish these capsule gene clusters from those clearly assigned to groups I and II.

The cloning and analysis of gene clusters for the expression of groups II and I/II capsules has helped the distinction of these capsules to be further refined. DNA probes from group II capsule gene clusters do not hybridise to DNA from group I/II capsule-expressing strains (Drake *et al* ., 1993). Recently, the cloning and preliminary genetic analysis of the K10 and K54 capsule gene clusters, including hybridisation and complementation studies with the K5 (a group II capsular antigen) have revealed these group I/II capsule gene clusters are quite distinct from the group II capsule gene clusters (Pearce and Roberts, 1995). Thus, despite mapping near *serA* on the chromosome as the group II gene clusters, Pearce and Roberts (1995) showed that these capsule gene clusters hitherto referred to as group I/II were sufficiently different and were classed as group III. This classification eliminates any ambiguity surrounding the group I/II nomenclature, which does suggest that these capsule gene clusters are in fact hybrid of the clearly classified groups I and II K antigen clusters. Hybridisation studies with the K11 and K19 strains suggest that these capsule gene clusters are not members of group III and may represent a new class of capsule gene clusters (Pearce and Roberts, 1995).

Table 1.2: Differences Among Groups I, II and III Capsular Polysaccharides of *E. coli*

Property	Group I	Group II	Group III
Molecular weight	>100Kd	<50Kd	<50Kd
State of lipid linkage at 100°C	Stable	Labile	Labile
Acidic component	GlcA GalA Pyruvate	GlcA NeuNAc KDO ManNAc Phosphate	GlcA NeuNAc KDO ManNAc Phosphate
Expression below 20°C	Yes	No	Yes
Coexpression with O antigens	O8, O9, O20	Many O antigens	NS
Lipid at reducing end	Core lipid A	PA	PA
Elevated CKS activity at 37°C	No	Yes	No
Genetic determinant on the *E. coli* chromosome located near	*rfb* (*his*), *rfc* (*trp*)	*kps* (*SerA*)	*kps* (*SerA*)
Intergeneric relationship with	*Klebsiella*	*H. influenzae* *N. meningitidis*	NS

Abbreviation: GalA, galacturonic acid; GlcA, glucuronic acid; KDO, 2-keto-3-deoxy-manno-octulosonic acid; ManNAc, N-acetylmannosaminuronic acid; NeuNAc, N-acetylneuraminic acid; PA, phosphatidic acid; NS, not stated; CKS, CMP-KDO synthetase

1.4 *E. coli* Group II Capsule Gene Clusters

The gene clusters of all group II K antigens studied so far revealed a conserved organisation consisting of three functional regions termed 1, 2 and 3 (Figure 1.1).

Molecular studies on the genes required for the expression of *E. coli* serotypes K1 (Silver *et al* ., 1981), K5, K7, K12, and K92 (Roberts *et al* ., 1986) and K4 (Drake *et al* ., 1993) show a similar genetic organisation consisting of a central region 2 flanked by regions 1 and 3. Mutations in regions 1 and 3 result in the accumulation of polysaccharide inside the cell, suggesting that the encoded products are needed for translocation of the capsular antigen to the cell surface (Boulnois *et al* ., 1987; Kröncke *et al* ., 1990a,b; Bronner *et al* ., 1993a,b). Regions 1 and 3 are conserved among group II capsule gene clusters and can be interchanged (Roberts *et al* ., 1986). Mutations in either region 1 or 3 can be complemented *in trans* by the corresponding region from other group II capsule gene clusters (Roberts *et al* ., 1986), which indicates that regions 1 and 3 encode a conserved set of proteins capable of exporting chemically distinct polysaccharides to the cell surface. Thus, genes in regions 1 and 3 are designated *kps* in keeping with their conservation among group II capsule gene cluster.

The central region 2 is serotype specific and contains genes that encode the proteins necessary for capsule biosynthesis (Boulnois and Jann, 1989; Vimr *et al* ., 1989; Silver and Vimr, 1990). Thus, the region 2 genes encode products that are specific for sugar synthesis, activation and polymerisation of a particular polysaccharide (Roberts *et al* ., 1986; Vimr *et al* ., 1989). Region 2 varies in sizes (Figure 1.1) among *E. coli* serotypes and these sizes correlate with the complexity of the encoded polysaccharide (Boulnois and Jann, 1989; Drake *et al* ., 1993). For instance, the complex heteropolymer of K4 antigen has a 14 kb region 2 (Drake *et al* ., 1993) in contrast to the 5.8 kb region 2 of the K1 antigen (Silver *et al* ., 1981, 1984; Annunziato *et al* ., 1995), and the 8.0 kb region 2 of the K5 antigen (Petit *et al* ., 1995) (Figure 1.1).

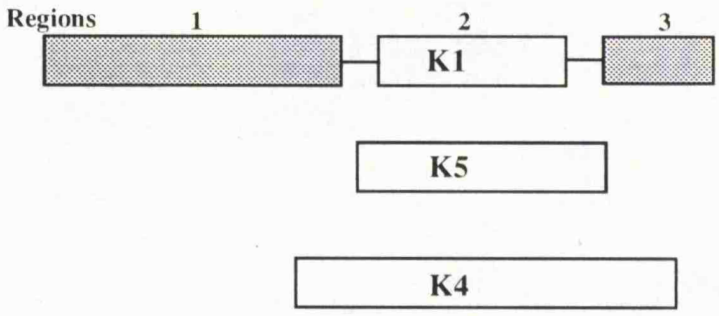


Figure 1.1: Genetic Organisation of *E. coli* Group II Capsule Gene Clusters. The three functional regions of the K1 gene cluster are shown. Size variation in region 2 of the K1, K5 and K4 are represented.Regions 1 and 3 are conserved among group II capsule gene clusters.

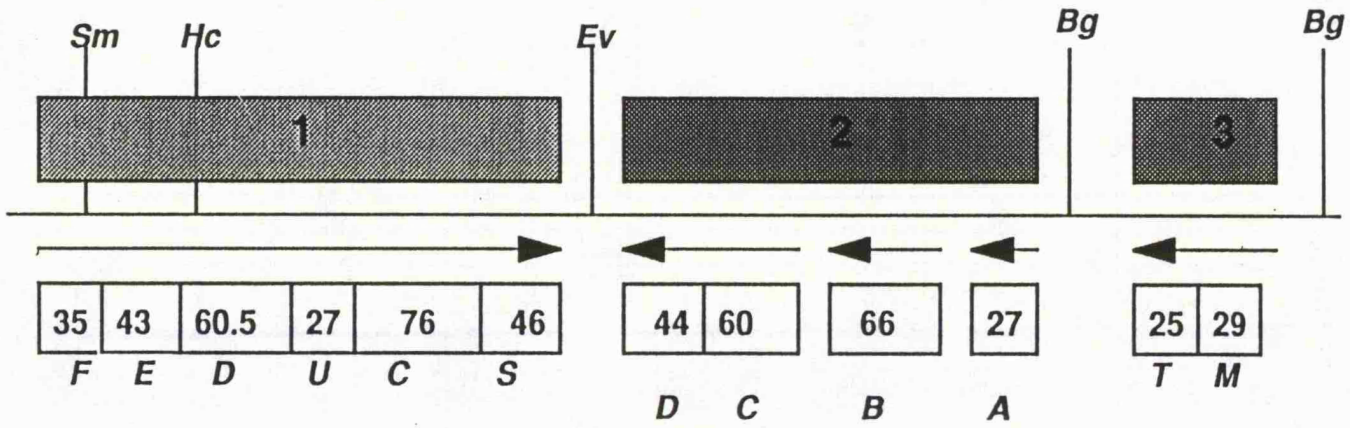
Among the group II capsules, the most extensively studied to date are the *E. coli* K1 and K5 capsule gene clusters. The K5 antigen is of primary interest and will serve as a paradigm for other group II capsules.

1.4.1 The *E. coli* K5 Capsule Gene Cluster

The nucleotide sequence of the entire *E. coli* K5 capsule gene cluster has been determined (Smith *et al* ., 1990; Pazzani *et al* ., 1993a; Petit *et al* ., 1995) and shown to consist of all genes necessary to direct the biosynthesis and export of the K5 capsular polysaccharide (Figure 1.2).

Region 2 of the K5 capsule gene cluster spans an 8.0 kb DNA fragment with an overall G+C content of 33.4% (Petit *et al* ., 1995). This G+C content is lower than the 50% G+C ratio usually observed for *E. coli* (Ørskov, 1984) and also lower than the G+C contents of both region 1 (50.6%) (Pazzani *et al* ., 1993a) and region 3 with 42.3% (Smith *et al* ., 1990) of the K5 capsule gene cluster. In other Gram-negative capsule gene clusters lower G+C contents have been reported (Steenbergen *et al* ., 1992; Edwards *et al* ., 1994; Ganguli *et al* ., 1994; Van Eldere *et al* ., 1995) and was suggested to reflect a common origin of these capsule gene clusters (Frosch *et al* ., 1991). The observed differences in G+C content between region 2 and those of regions 1 and 3

Figure 1.2: Molecular organisation of the *E. coli* K5 gene cluster



Bg = *Bgl* II; *Ev* = *Eco*RV; *Hc* = *Hinc* II; *Sm* = *Sma* I

→ : denotes direction of transcript

which are conserved in different group II capsules may indicate the acquisition of different region 2 sequences perhaps through homologous recombination between the flanking regions 1 and 3 of an incoming and resident capsule gene cluster. This view is augmented by the findings of a marked divergence in the amino acid sequences at the C-termini of region 2 flanking KpsS and KpsT proteins from different capsule gene clusters (Drake, 1991; Pavelka *et al* ., 1994). The 3' end of these genes encoding both KpsS and KpsT proteins are located at the junction sites between regions 1/2 and 2/3 respectively. Thus, recombination events may explain the source of capsular diversity in group II capsule gene clusters.

Recent analysis of the K5 capsule gene cluster shows that region 2 contains four genes designated *kfiA -D* (*kfi* , for K five antigen) with two large intergenic spaces (Petit *et al* ., 1995) (Figure 1.2). The intergenic regions are between *kfiA* and *B* genes and *kfiB* and *C* genes. Northern blotting, promoter probe analysis and transcript mapping revealed the presence of three promoters located upstream of *kfiA* , *B* and *C* and three major overlapping transcripts of 8.0, 6.5 and 3.0 kb (Petit *et al* ., 1995). The 8.0 kb transcript originating upstream of *kfiA* gene is a large polycistronic message that overlaps the other two messages and spans the entire region 2. Similar single polycistronic units have been described for the region 2 capsule gene cluster from *E. coli* K1 (Silver *et al* ., 1993) and *N. meningitidis* (Edwards *et al* ., 1994).

The genes described within region 2 encode four proteins KfiA-D that are required for the biosynthesis of the *E. coli* K5 capsular polysaccharide (Petit *et al* ., 1995). The role of two of the encoded proteins in polysaccharide biosynthesis have been confirmed. The KfiC protein is a glycosyltransferase enzyme that adds both glucuronic acid (GlcA) and N-acetylglucosamine (GlcNAc) in an alternating manner at the non-reducing end of the growing polysaccharide (Petit *et al* ., 1995). Searches of the protein databases and CLUSTER-V alignment of the predicted amino acid sequences of KfiC have identified respectively extensive sequence homology to a number of glycosyltransferase enzymes and three conserved regions that might be of importance in function of these enzymes (Petit *et al* ., 1995). These homologous glycosyltransferase enzymes are involved in the biosynthesis of chemically unrelated polysaccharides. The Exo proteins (ExoM, ExoU, ExoO and ExoW) of *R. meliloti* are required for the biosynthesis of succinoglycan (Gluksmann *et al* ., 1993; Reuber and Walker, 1993). Lsg, the enzyme encoded by the *lsg* locus of *H. influenzae* is required for the synthesis of an N-

acetylglucosamine-containing epitope of lipooligosaccharides (LOS) on the cell surface (McLauchlin *et al* ., 1992) and NodC is a glycosyltransferase involved in the biosynthesis of D-glucosamine-containing LOS essential for nodulation by *Rhizobium* species (Debelle *et al* ., 1992). Others include HetA which is involved in the synthesis of heterocyst-specific envelope polysaccharide in *Anaebena* species (Holland and Wolk, 1990) and the HasA protein which is required for hyaluronic acid synthesis in *Streptococcus pyogenes* (Dougherty and van de Reijn, 1993). It is believed that a polysaccharide biosynthetic complex exists in the inner-face of the cytoplasmic membrane and Western blot analysis using antibodies to the KfiC protein shows its association with the inner-face of the cytoplasmic membrane (G. Rigg, G. Griffiths and I.S. Roberts unpublished). Proteins encoded by regions 1 and 3 are also required for KfiC association with the inner-face of the cytoplasmic membrane (G. Rigg and I.S. Roberts, unpublished). The KfiD protein is a UDP-glucose dehydrogenase enzyme, which catalyses the conversion of UDP-glucose to UDP-glucuronic acid, a component sugar of the K5 polysaccharide (Sieberth *et al* ., 1995). The nucleotide sequence of the *kfiD* gene shares significant identity to NAD-dependent sugar dehydrogenase encoding genes in other bacteria (Petit *et al* ., 1995). It is 60% identical to the *cap3A* gene that encode a UDP-glucose dehydrogenase enzyme involved in the expression of the type 3 capsule of *S. pneumoniae* (Arrecubieta *et al* ., 1994) and also shares 59% identity to the *hasB* gene required for the synthesis of hyaluronic acid capsule of group A streptococci (Dougherty and Van de Rijn, 1993). The overexpression of the KfiD protein results in elevated UDP-glucose dehydrogenase activity (Petit *et al* ., 1995; Sieberth *et al* ., 1995), which lends further evidence that the KfiD is a UDP-glucose dehydrogenase enzyme. The exact roles of both KfiA and B proteins in the biosynthesis of the K5 polysaccharide are still unknown. The *kfiA* and *kfiB* genes encode proteins of 27 kDa and 66 kDa respectively and are believed to be located in the cytoplasm (Petit *et al* ., 1995). The predicted amino acid sequences of both proteins do not share any significant homology to other proteins deposited in the database. A mutant of the *kfiA* gene has been found to exhibit a low endogenous transferase activity *in vitro* , but can extend exogenous polysaccharide (Sieberth, 1994). This evidence suggests a role for the encoded KfiA protein in the initiation of polysaccharide biosynthesis, or possibly required for the attachment of the endogenous acceptor on the membrane, onto which polymerisation catalysed by the KfiC occurs. The expression of K5 capsule at 37°C as determined by sensitivity to the capsule-specific bacteriophage was abolished when Tn*phoA* was inserted within the *kfiB* gene (Stevens, 1995), which also suggests a role in

biosynthesis of the K5 antigen. The polarity effects of this insertion on the expression of the downstream genes *kfiC* and *D* are unlikely as a separate transcript for the *kfiC* and *D* genes has been identified (Petit *et al* ., 1995). Detail analysis of both the KfiA and KfiB are currently going on to define their exact role in the biosynthesis of the K5 capsular polysaccharide.

Region 3 of the K5 capsule gene cluster consists of two genes *kpsM* and *T* organised in a single transcriptional unit (Smith *et al* ., 1990). A similar organisation was described for the region 3 of K1 capsule gene cluster (Pavelka *et al* ., 1991). The promoter for region 3 of K5 antigen gene cluster has been mapped to 741 bp upstream of the initiation codon for *kpsM* (Stevens, 1995). Transcript originating from the region 3 promoter was temperature regulated, only being detected at capsule-permissive temperature of 37°C (Stevens, 1995). In both the K1 and K5 capsule gene clusters, transcription of region 3 is in the same direction as in region 2 transcript. For the K5 capsule gene cluster, region 2 was shown to be regulated by RfaH and a recently described JUMP-start (Hobbs and Reezes, 1994) sequence in region 3 is important for this regulation (Stevens *et al* ., 1995). Analysis of the predicted amino acid composition of the encoded proteins indicated that the KpsM and T probably exist as homodimers (Smith *et al* ., 1990; Pavelka *et al* ., 1991, 1994) that may function in a polysaccharide export system analogous to the periplasmic binding protein-dependent transport system of gram-negative bacteria (Higgins *et al* ., 1985). The functions of these two proteins will be discussed below under the section on polysaccharide export.

The nucleotide sequence for the entire region 1 of the K5 capsule gene cluster has been determined (Pazzani *et al* ., 1993a,b). Region 1 consists of six genes *kpsFEDUCS* (Figure 1.2) organised as a single transcriptional unit. By Northern blotting and transcript mapping, this transcriptional organisation has been confirmed and the promoter identified to 225 bp upstream from the start codon of the first gene *kpsF* (Simpson *et al* ., 1996). The promoter had -35 and -10 consensus sequence similar to an *E. coli* σ70 promoter. Region 1 is transcribed as an 8.0 kb polycistronic mRNA which was processed to form a separate 1.3 kb transcript encoding the last gene, *kpsS* . The generation of a separate *kpsS* transcript has been postulated to bring about differential expression of KpsS from the other region 1 encoded proteins (Simpson *et al* ., 1996) and thereby enable regulation of capsular polysaccharide expression through a role for KpsS in the modification of the polysaccharide prior to export (Roberts, 1996). Two binding site consensus sequences for integration

host factor (IHF) were identified 110 bp upstream and 130 bp downstream of the region 1 transcription start site. Binding of IHF which is a histone-like DNA-bending protein at these sites was suggested to change the DNA conformation and therefore may alter the efficiency of transcription and/or mediate the action of other regulators on the *kps* genes (Simpson *et al* ., 1996). By using strains with mutations in *himA* and *himD*, which encode the two subunits of IHF, fivefold and sixfold reductions respectively in the expression of KpsE protein at capsule permissive temperature was demonstrated (Simpson *et al* ., 1996). Although, previous results has shown that a functional IHF is not essential for group II capsule expression (Stevens *et al* ., 1995), the reduced expression of KpsE does suggest a role for IHF in mediating the action of other regulatory proteins. A Rho-dependent transcriptional terminator was located within the *kpsF* gene, and was postulated to modulate the transcription of region 1 in response to the physiological state of the cell such that under conditions of physiological stress expression of region 1 is reduced (Simpson *et al* ., 1996). Like region 3, the region 1 transcript is temperature regulated with no transcription detectable at non-capsule permissive temperature (18^{o}C). The nucleotide sequence of *kpsF* in the K5 and K1 antigen gene clusters is 98.8% identical, confirming that this gene is conserved between different group II capsule gene clusters (Simpson *et al* ., 1996) Analysis of the predicted amino acid sequence of the KpsF protein has revealed significant homology to the GutQ protein, a hypothetical ORF 328 protein of *E. coli* and a KpsF homologue in *H. influenzae* (Simpson *et al* ., 1996). Based on the proposed role of the GutQ protein as a regulator of the glucitol operon in *E. coli* (Yamada *et al* ., 1990), it has been suggested that the KpsF protein may play a role in the regulation of capsule expression in group II capsule producing *E. coli* (Cielewicz *et al* ., 1993). It was observed however, that mutants lacking a functional *kpsF* gene are still able to express the K5 capsule in a temperature-dependent manner (Pazzani *et al* ., 1993a,b). The possibility that GutQ could be acting in *trans* to complement the deleted *kpsF* was ruled out by the observation of capsule expression when a plasmid which contains the K5 capsule gene cluster minus the *kpsF* gene was introduced into a strain with a mutation in the *gutQ* gene (Simpson *et al* ., 1996). Therefore, KpsF does not appear to have an essential role in the expression of group II capsules.

The *kpsE* and *D* genes encode proteins of 43 and 60 kDa respectively. In *E. coli* K1, the *kpsE* gene is reported to encode a protein of 39 kDa, and the proposed translational start site of the *kpsE* gene in *E. coli* K5 has been disputed (Cieslewicz *et al* ., 1993). The translational start of the *kpsE* gene in

E. coli K5 was confirmed by purification and N-terminal sequencing of the encoded protein (Rosenow *et al .*, 1995a). The KpsE protein hydropathy plot (Kyte and Doolittle, 1982) which is similar to both the BexC protein of *H. influenzae* and CtrB protein of *N. meningitidis* revealed a relatively hydrophilic protein with N- and C-terminal hydrophobic domains (Kroll *et al .*, 1990; Frosch *et al .*, 1991; Pazzani, 1992). These three proteins also share extensive homology. The KpsD protein is a periplasmic protein with a typical N-terminal signal sequence (Pazzani *et al .*, 1993a,b). Both KpsE and D proteins are similar in the K1 and K5 capsule gene cluster (Cieslewicz *et al .*, 1993; Pazzani *et al .*, 1993a,b; Wunder *et al .*, 1994) and have been suggested to play a role in polysaccharide export (see below).

The KpsU protein is a functional CMP-KDO synthetase enzyme (Rosenow *et al .*, 1995b) and the protein is homologous (44.3% identity and 70% similarity) to the KdsB enzyme of *E. coli* (Pazzani *et al .*, 1993a,b). The KdsB enzyme is also a CMP-KDO synthetase enzyme that catalyses the activation of KDO prior to its linkage to lipid A (Munson *et al .*, 1978; Goldman and Kohlbrenner, 1985). The KpsU enzyme is suggested to function in the same manner in generating activated KDO before linkage of KDO to phospholipid in group II capsules (Jann and Jann, 1983). The identification of a functional CMP-KDO synthetase structural gene within region 1 accounts for the high level of this enzyme activity observed at capsule permissive temperature in group II capsule-expressing *E. coli* (Finke *et al .*, 1990). Mutations in the *kpsU* gene of the K5 capsule gene cluster do not abolish capsule production as determined by sensitivity to K5-specific bacteriophage(Pazzani, 1992) and this is thought to be as a result of the compensatory effect of the enzyme encoded by the *kdsB* gene. An immunoelectron microscopy of this mutant revealed patches of polysaccharide at the cell surface and polysaccharide accumulated as electron dense aggregates in the cytoplasm (Bronner *et al .*, 1993a). Polysaccharide aggregate is a phenotype associated with both KpsC and KpsS mutants (Bronner *et al .*, 1993a), and it is possible that the oligonucleotide linker that contains a stop codon which is inserted in the *kpsU* gene in this mutant has resulted in a polarity effect on the expression of *kpsC* and perhaps *kpsS* genes. The translational start codon for the *kpsC* gene overlaps the end of *kpsU* , which shows that these genes may be translationally coupled (Pazzani, 1992).

By minicell analysis, the *kpsC* and *kpsS* genes have been shown to encode proteins of 76 kDa and 46 kDa respectively in the K5 capsule gene cluster (Pazzani *et al .*, 1993a). In region 1 of *E. coli* K1 antigen gene cluster, proteins

of similar sizes are encoded (Silver *et al* ., 1984; Roberts *et al* ., 1986). The KpsC and KpsS proteins are predicted to be located in the cytoplasm in *E. coli* K1 and K5 (Silver *et al* ., 1984; Pazzani *et al* ., 1993a). Mutations in both *kpsC* and *kpsS* genes result in the accumulation of full length intracellular polysaccharide that lack KDO or phospholipid substitution in the cytoplasm as electron dense aggregates (Bronner *et al* ., 1993a,b). It has been reported in both *E. coli* K1 and K5, that membranes from *kpsC* and *kpsS* mutants have reduced endogenous transferase activities *in vitro* (Vimr *et al* ., 1989; Bronner *et al* ., 1993a,b). In the case of *E. coli* K5, the addition of exogenous K5 polysaccharide to membrane preparations of *kpsC* and *kpsS* mutants resulted in increased transferase activity from about 2% to 25% of the wild-type (Bronner *et al* ., 1993b). It is therefore likely that *kpsC* and *kpsS* mutants may reduce the amount of existing endogenous acceptor on the membrane. In support of this notion, is the suggestion that KpsC and KpsS may form a complex with the enzymes for polysaccharide biosynthesis at the cytoplasmic face of the inner membrane (Vimr *et al* ., 1989; Bronner *et al* ., 1993a,b). It has been postulated that the biosynthetic complex at the cytoplasmic face of the inner membrane is linked to enzymes required for the translocation of capsular polysaccharide to the cell surface (Roberts, 1995, 1996). The possible role played by the KpsC and KpsS in the export of polysaccharide will be discussed (see section 1.6.2.2 below).

1.5 Genetic Organisation of *H. influenzae* and *N. meningitidis* Capsule Gene Clusters

H. influenzae produces six serologically distinct capsular polysaccharides designated a through f. Of these six serotypes, only the type b strains are associated with invasive diseases in human (Moxon and Kroll, 1990). The genes for the production of *H. influenzae* type b antigen have been cloned and the cluster shows a similar organisation to that of group II capsule gene clusters of *E. coli* (Kroll *et al* ., 1989) (Figure 1.3). The central region 2 of the *H. influenzae* type b capsule gene (*cap*) cluster is serotype specific and encodes proteins necessary for polysaccharide biosynthesis (Ely *et al* ., 1989; Van Eldere *et al* ., 1995). The flanking regions 1 and 3 are common to all of *H. influenzae* serotypes and like the *E. coli* group II capsule genes are involved in the export of polysaccharide to the cell surface (Kroll *et al* ., 1989, 1990). Region 1 of the *H. influenzae* type b *cap* locus has been sequenced and shown to contain four genes, *bexABCD* probably organised in a single transcriptional unit (Kroll *et al* ., 1990).

A striking feature of the majority of type b strains is the duplication of the *cap* locus, which comprises two directly repeated 17 kb copies of DNA separated by a 1.2 kb 'bridge segment' (Kroll and Moxon, 1988). The duplication is not perfect, since the *cap* locus contains only one functional copy of *bexA* (Kroll *et al* ., 1989). The *bexA* gene is located in the bridge region and is required for polysaccharide export (Kroll *et al* ., 1990). Strains of *H. influenzae* type b revert to an acapsular phenotype at high frequency. This instability is attributed to recombination events between homologous sites in each repeat which reduce the *cap* to a single copy and thereby result in the loss of *bexA* (Kroll and Moxon, 1988).

Strains of *H. influenzae* type b may contain multiple copies of the *cap* genes (Kroll and Moxon, 1988). Recombination events mediated by direct repeats of an insertion sequence-like element, IS1016 which flank the *cap* locus are responsible for this amplification (Kroll *et al* ., 1991). The amplification of *cap* is accompanied by an increase in capsule synthesis (Kroll and Moxon, 1988). The advantages of the *cap* instability and gene-dosage phenomena *in vivo* are not clear. On the other hand, it has been suggested that the down-regulation of capsule expression may promote bacterial adhesion and invasion of host cells mediated by outer membrane opacity proteins (Virji *et al* ., 1994).

The *N. meningitidis* group B capsule gene cluster (*cps*) has been analysed and it revealed five regions A-E (Frosch *et al* ., 1989). In all, genes required for the biosynthesis and export of capsular polysaccharide are located in three regions organised in a similar manner to those of group II capsule gene clusters (Frosch *et al* ., 1989, 1991; Hammerschmidt *et al* ., 1994) (Figure 1.3). A central region A encodes all enzymes necessary for biosynthesis of the α-2,8-polysialic acid polymer (Edwards *et al* ., 1994; Ganguli *et al* ., 1994). This region is flanked by region B which encodes two proteins, LipA and LipB needed for phospholipid substitution of the polysaccharide at the reducing end prior to transportation (Frosch and Muller, 1993). Subsequent cell surface translocation is directed by region C encoded proteins on the other side of the central region A. Region C encodes proteins that share strong features with members of the ABC superfamily of transporters (Frosch *et al* ., 1991). The additional two regions, D and E within the *cps* gene cluster were originally thought to be involved in regulation of capsule expression (Frosch *et al* ., 1989). However, recent studies (Hammerschmidt *et al* ., 1994) have shown that region D contains genes not required for capsule expression, but encodes enzymes involved in meningococcal lipo-oligosaccharide biosynthesis.

Regions analogous to regions D and E have not been identified in *E. coli* group II capsule gene clusters.

The capsular polysaccharide of *N. meningitidis* group B is identical to the *E. coli* K1 antigen (Bhattacharjee *et al .*, 1975). Although initial studies indicated that little homology exists between DNA of these two capsule genes (Echarti *et al .*, 1983), subsequent analysis has shown that the proteins involved in the synthesis of the polysaccharide are similar. For instance, the NeuB protein of *E. coli* K1, which is postulated to encode an N-acetylneuraminic acid synthetase, is 57% similar to the CpsB protein of *N. meningitidis* (Annunziato *et al .*, 1995). In these bacteria, the predicted amino acid sequences of the CMP-N-acetylneuraminic acid synthetase and the sialytransferase enzymes also share significant homologies (Frosch *et al .*, 1991; Ganguli *et al .*, 1994).

The homologous genetic organisation of the capsule genes of *H. influenzae* , *N. meningitidis* and *E. coli* expressing group II K antigens suggests that they have a common evolutionary origin. Support for this comes from demonstration of DNA and protein homology between the functional regions of the capsule gene clusters of these bacteria. For example, the *kpsM* and *kpsT* genes of region 3 in *E. coli* share extensive sequence homology with the *H. influenzae bexB* and *bexA* genes (Kroll *et al .*, 1990; Smith *et al .*, 1990; Pavelka *et al .*, 1991), and with the *N. meningitidis ctrC* and *ctrD* genes (Frosch *et al .*, 1991) respectively. In addition, the *kpsE* gene is homologous to the *bexC* and *ctrB* genes of *H. influenzae* and *N. meningitidis* respectively (Cieslewicz *et al .*, 1993; Pazzani *et al .*, 1993). These genes encode proteins that are involved in the cell surface expression of capsular polysaccharide in these bacteria (see section 1.6.2.2).

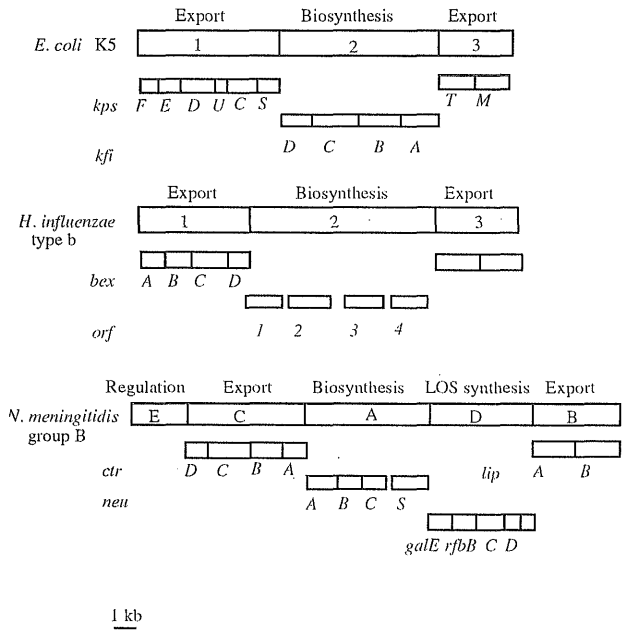


Figure 1.3: Genetic organisation of the *H. influenzae* type b, and *N. meningitidis* group B capsule gene clusters and the *E. coli* K5 group II capsule gene cluster. For clarity, a single copy of the *H. influenzae* capsule gene cluster is shown (see text). The large boxes denote the conserved functional regions and small boxes the specific genes that have been identified within each cluster.

1.6 Polysaccharide and Protein Export in Gram-negative Bacteria

The export of molecules in Gram-negative bacteria has been a subject of intensive research for the past few decades, and the processes involved are yet to be fully elucidated. The majority of what is known today comes from studies of the protein export systems. Some of these systems involved in protein export have been identified in the export of polysaccharide, and therefore represent a common theme in the export of molecules in Gram-negative bacteria. It is also likely that despite the common theme, export processes may differ especially to accommodate differences in substrates being translocated.

Polysaccharides, proteins and many other molecules are synthesised in the bacterial cytoplasm and some of these molecules are located partially or completely outside the cytoplasm. To reach their final destination, these molecules must often cross one or more membranes. For molecules destined for the surface or external milieu of the bacterial cell, they must cross the cytoplasmic membrane in Gram-positive bacteria and both cytoplasmic and outer membranes in Gram-negative bacteria. Many secreted bacterial proteins reach the external milieu or periplasm (in case of Gram-negative bacteria) via the secretory (Sec) pathway (Schatz and Beckwith, 1990; Wickner *et al* ., 1991; Pugsley, 1993). Sec-dependent secretion requires that the protein to be secreted contains an N-terminal signal sequence (Pugsley, 1993). This absolute requirement for N-terminal signal sequences, thus severely limits the number of substrates that can be translocated in this way. Some extracellular proteins and nonprotein products that are translocated across both inner and outer membranes of Gram-negative bacteria cannot use the Sec pathway (Kenny *et al* ., 1991; Fath and Kolter, 1993). For these products, some dedicated export systems generally grouped as ABC transporters exist that facilitate membrane translocations with a large degree of substrate specificity (Higgins, 1992; Lory, 1992; Wandersman, 1992). Certain proteins are also capable of self-promoting their secretion (Lory, 1992; Pugsley, 1993).

1.6.1 Protein Export

1.6.1.1 Sec-dependent Translocation

Proteins transported by the Sec pathway are called secretory proteins or presecretory proteins if they are made as precursors. Secretory proteins are

distinguished from other proteins by the presence of a cleavable secretory signal sequence. Signal sequences are exclusively amino terminal and their characteristic features include a positively charged amino-terminal domain (N) of 1 to 5 residues, a central hydrophobic region (H domain) of 7 to 15 residues and a carboxyl-terminal region (C domain) containing 5 to 7 residues that ends at the signal peptidase cleavage site (von Heijne, 1984; Pugsley and Schwartz, 1985; Wandersman, 1989; Pugsley, 1993). Shortening or introducing charged or strong polar residues into the H domain, or eliminating the basic amino acids from the N domain usually results in reduced export efficiency (Pugsley, 1993). In the majority of cases identified so far, exchange of signal sequences between presecretory proteins does not affect the translocation of such proteins (von Heijne, 1984, 1986; Delepelaire and Wandersman, 1990). On translocation of presecretory proteins, the signal processing site is recognised and cleaved by signal peptidase. Thus the primary function of the signal sequence is to initiate insertion into the cytoplasmic membrane and translocate an otherwise cytoplasmic protein across the inner membrane.

In the Sec pathway, protein secretion across the inner membrane requires interaction with products of the *sec* (*prl*) genes. Six Sec proteins (SecABDEFY) have been identified as components of the secretory pathway (Gardel *et al* ., 1990; de Cock and Tommassen, 1991, 1992; Kumamoto, 1991; Ito, 1992). SecB and A are both cytoplasmic proteins. It has been suggested that SecB exists probably as a tetramer and may be part of a protein complex that binds to presecretory proteins (Watanabe and Blobel, 1989a,b; Kumamoto, 1991). A major role of the SecB protein is to pilot presecretory proteins to the cytoplasmic membrane (de Cock and Tommassen, 1992). The SecB proteins are also referred to as secretory chaperonins and are in many ways similar to the general molecular chaperonins, which bind to exposed polypeptide segments (Pugsley, 1993). The SecA protein is found associated with the ribosomes as well as the membrane (Cabelli *et al* ., 1991). Thus, it could interact with the nascent secretory proteins as they emerge from ribosomes while it is free in the cytosol or when it binds to the inner face of the cytoplasmic membrane (Pugsley, 1993). SecA is essential for cell viability as mutations in the *secA* gene are lethal (Matsuyama *et al* ., 1990; Akimura *et al* ., 1991; Jarosik and Oliver, 1991). SecA binds and hydrolyses ATP (Matsuyama *et al* ., 1990), and it has a sequence with an amino-terminal region that is identical to nucleotide binding (Walker box A) domain found in proteins such as ATPase and kinases (Schmidt *et al* ., 1988) and has been referred to as secretory ATPase because of the ATP binding capability.

The other four Sec components, Sec D, E, F and Y are integral membrane proteins with several long stretches of hydrophobic amino acids that probably span the cytoplasmic membrane (Gardel *et al* ., 1990; Schatz *et al* ., 1991; Ito, 1992) and are collectively termed translocases (Pugsley, 1993). The membrane organisation of the SecY protein shows that it probably has 10 membrane spanning domains with the N- and C-termini in the cytoplasm (Akiyama and Ito, 1987), a topology that is similar to the LacY lactose permease involved in solute transport in Gram-negative bacteria (Ito, 1992). The SecE protein has three membrane spanning segments, and the C-terminal domain was shown to be sufficient for SecE activity (Schatz *et al* ., 1991). Ito (1992) however reported a single transmembrane domain organisation for the SecE protein from *Bacillus subtilis* . Mutations in both SecY and E block protein translocation (Ito, 1992). The functions of SecD and SecF proteins have not been fully elucidated. Each appear to span the membrane six times (Gardel *et al* ., 1990). The SecD and SecF proteins are characterised by a large periplasmic domain and mutants lacking both proteins either reduce or block protein translocation where molecular chaperones that interact with newly translocated proteins are absent. Both proteins have been suggested to perform related functions at a late stage in export (Pugsley, 1993). As proposed by Simon and Blobel (1992), the translocases are thought to function in the formation of a translocation channel by one or more of the integral membrane components. This in effect will result in shielding of hydrophilic segments of the presecretory protein from the hydrophobic environment of the lipid bilayer.

Proteins may reach their final location on translocation across the cytoplasmic membrane via the Sec pathway or may rely on the participation of other assembly proteins or complexes like the chaperon and general secretory proteins. The general mechanism involved in the Sec-dependent export process is represented in figure 1.4.

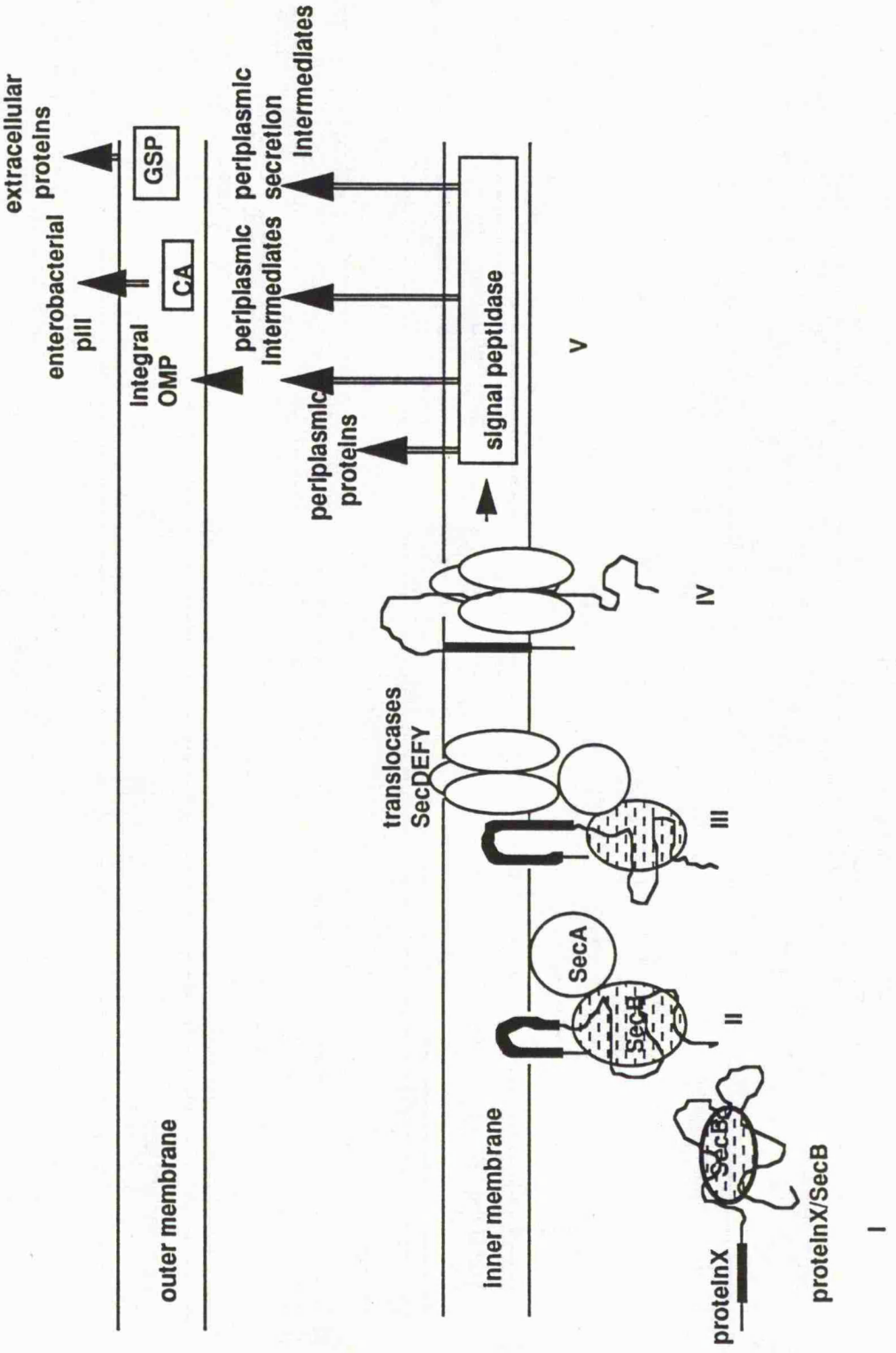


Figure 1.4: General export process in Gram-negative bacteria, showing the Sec-dependent insertion and translocation. The model represented shows from left to right; SecB bound to proteinX (I), which then interact with SecA at the inner face of cytoplasmic membrane (II). The proteinX-SecAB complex then interacts with the integral membrane translocases SecDEFY (III).Both SecAB proteins are released (IV) before the signal peptide shown in thick lines is cleaved, leading to the export of the protein across the cytoplasmic membrane (V).Abbreviation: OMP, outer membrane protein; CA, chaperone assembly; GSP, general secretory pathway.

1.6.1.2 Membrane Topology: Determinants of Protein Secretion

In Gram-negative bacteria the envelope is composed of two membranes (inner and outer) separated by the periplasm, and proteins destined for the cell surface upon translocation across the inner membrane must transverse both the periplasmic space and outer membrane. Within the bacterial membrane, proteins adopt a variety of topological states that may expose different domains of such proteins for interaction with other components of the export system and/or the substrate being exported. The different topological states exhibited by integral membrane proteins have been classed as monotopic, bitopic and polytopic (Blobel, 1980; Pugsley, 1993). The bitopic membrane proteins have at least one transmembrane segment mainly of hydrophobic amino acids embedded in the lipid bilayer with one extremity exposed on each side of the membrane (Blobel, 1980). Bitopic membrane proteins are divided into three classes depending on their orientation and whether they are made as precursors. Type Ia bitopic membrane proteins are made as signal peptide-bearing precursors processed by signal peptidases (Pugsley, 1993) and a second hydrophobic domain that acts as the stop transfer anchors them in the cytoplasmic membrane. The type Ib membrane proteins have a single, unprocessed stretch of hydrophobic amino acids at their amino terminus which acts to insert the proteins in the lipid bilayer (Blobel, 1980; von Heijne and Gavel, 1988). Both types Ia and b membrane proteins have a C-terminus in the cytoplasm. Type II bitopic membrane proteins are similar to periplasmic proteins except that the membrane spanning signal-like sequence at the N-terminus is not cleaved. They are usually anchored by the N-terminal region with the remaining bulk of the protein in the periplasm (von Heijne, 1986; Pugsley, 1993).

Polytopic integral membrane proteins span the membrane at least twice via domains of mainly, but not exclusively, hydrophobic amino acid residues (Blobel, 1980). Each of the transmembrane domain is potentially capable of targeting the nascent polypeptide to the cytoplasmic membrane (Lee *et al* ., 1992; Traxler *et al* ., 1992; Gavel and von Heijne, 1994) and the 'positive inside rule' of von Heijne (1986b) proposed that the positively charged amino acids determined the orientation of adjacent transmembrane domains. On the other hand, monotopic proteins are only partially embedded in the lipid bilayer by either the N- or C-termini (Pugsley, 1993). They do not have signal sequence-like regions and their membrane association is thought to be strengthened by interaction with other integral membrane proteins (Ulbrandt *et al* ., 1992).

Some proteins rely for secretion on information encoded within the exported polypeptide (Kuhn, 1988; Koronakis *et al* ., 1989; Boyd and Beckwith, 1990; Schatz and Beckwith, 1990; Svirsky *et al* ., 1995). In these proteins determinants of localisation must be part of the mature polypeptide and they can be located in any part of the polypeptide chain (Lory, 1992). Both N- and C-terminal domains have been implicated as export signals capable of self-promoting the translocation of several bacterial proteins (Koronakis *et al*., 1989; Calamia and Manoil, 1992; Lory, 1992) and the topology of the protein within the bacterial membrane is important in the disposition of these export signals.

Many integral membrane proteins contain an amino terminal region consisting of a short hydrophilic domain with a net positive charge, followed by a stretch of hydrophobic membrane spanning α-helical domain with no signal processing site. Such N-terminal regions have been shown to promote protein insertion and translocation of the hydrophilic domains across the inner membrane, and thus constitute export signals (Roof *et al* ., 1991; Calamia and Beckwith, 1992; Karlsson *et al* ., 1993; Uhland *et al* ., 1994; Vianney *et al* ., 1994). The positively charged amino terminal region functions as cytoplasmic anchor, determining the orientation of the transmembrane domains and the entire polypeptide (von Heijne, 1986; Boyd and Beckwith, 1990; Nilsson and von Heijne, 1990). The N-terminal sequences that constitute such export signals in the TolA and TonB proteins have been shown to be functionally homologous (Karlsson *et al* ., 1993).

Evidence of C-terminal domains acting as export signals is best exemplified by the hemolysin (HlyA) export. Information sufficient for membrane targeting and export of wild-type hemolysin into the surrounding medium has been shown to be located in the C-terminal 113 amino acid residues (Koronakis *et al* ., 1987; Mackman *et al* ., 1987). Further analysis of HlyA protein from *E. coli* , *Proteus vulgaris* and *Morganella morganii* identified three conserved features within this C-terminal region that are necessary for the export role. These features are the amphiphilic α-helix secondary structure, followed by a cluster of charged residues and the hydrophobic/hydroxylated tail (Koronakis *et al* ., 1989). These three HlyA proteins do not show any primary sequence homology within the C-termini (Koronakis *et al* ., 1987), underlying the importance of secondary consensus features in export functions.

The analysis of protein topology is therefore a step in the study of structure-function relationship.

1.6.1.3 Bacterial ABC Transporters

The ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporters constitute a superfamily of proteins involved in the transport of diverse molecules found in both prokaryotes and eukaryotes. In prokaryotes, the bacterial ABC transporters function as importers and exporters and respectively constitutes two families within the superfamily (Ames *et al* ., 1990; Higgins, 1992; Fath and Kolter, 1993). A third family is the eukaryotic ABC transporters involved in the export of multidrug resistance (MDR) protein (Endicott and Ling, 1989), including antimalarial drugs from *Plasmoduim falciparum* (Foote *et al* ., 1989).

The family of bacterial ABC exporters is the largest and fastest-growing among the ABC superfamily of transporters. Over 40 systems have been identified (Fath and Kolter, 1993). In general, ABC transporters have a protein with a conserved ATP-binding motif or 'Walker' motif (Walker *et al*., 1982) and another with membrane spanning domains (MSDs). The ATP-binding component can be present on the same polypeptide as the MSDs (as in the eukaryotic exporters) or on a polypeptide separate from the membrane spanning unit (as in the ABC importers) (Fath and Kolter, 1993). Many of the bacterial ABC exporters involved in protein export require in addition to the ATP-binding cassette and MSDs units, other protein(s) to form a functional export complex. These additional components include proteins belonging to the newly described membrane fusion protein (MFP) family (Dinh *et al* ., 1994), also referred to as accessory factors (Fath and Kolter, 1993) and the outer membrane proteins (Gilson *et al* ., 1987; Letoffe *et al* ., 1990; Wandersman and Delepelaire, 1990). The accessory proteins have been shown to fractionate mostly to the inner membrane (Delepelaire and Wandersman, 1991). The CvaA protein involved in the export of colicin V belongs to this class of accessory proteins (Fath and Kolter, 1993) or MFP family (Dinh *et al* ., 1994) and it has a topological organisation which consists of a single transmembrane domain near its N-terminus and a large C-terminal region extending into the periplasm (Skvirsky *et al* ., 1995). The accessory factors or membrane fusion proteins are thought to connect the inner and outer membranes and thus function to facilitate export of substrates through both membranes of Gram-negative bacteria (Fath and Kolter, 1993; Dinh *et al* ., 1994). Some systems require the outer membrane

components and in such systems they interact with the MFP components, resulting in the fusion of inner and outer membranes or the formation of an oligomeric protein pore in the outer membrane (Dinh *et al* ., 1994). The processes involved in the ABC-mediated export of α-haemolysin in *E. coli* is shown in figure 1.5. Genes coding for the outer membrane proteins can be closely linked to the other export genes (Delepelaire and Wandersman, 1990; Letoffe *et al* ., 1990) or physically distant (Wandersman and Delepelaire, 1990). Some of the components of ABC exporters are functionally interchangeable. For instance, the HasD and HasE proteins which normally export the HasA protein (a haem acquisition protein) of *Serretia marcescens* are capable of secreting the metalloprotease C (PrtC protein) of *Erwinia chrysanthemi* (Binet and Wandersman, 1995). However, the HasA protein is secreted only by its specific transporters. A summary of prototype bacterial ABC exporters are listed in table 1.3 and they include systems involved in the export of proteins (Felmlee *et al* ., 1985; Koronakis *et al* ., 1987, 1988), peptides (Gilson *et al* ., 1990) and polysaccharides (Stanfield *et al* ., 1988; Smith *et al* ., 1990; Pavelka *et al* ., 1991; Bronner *et al* ., 1994).

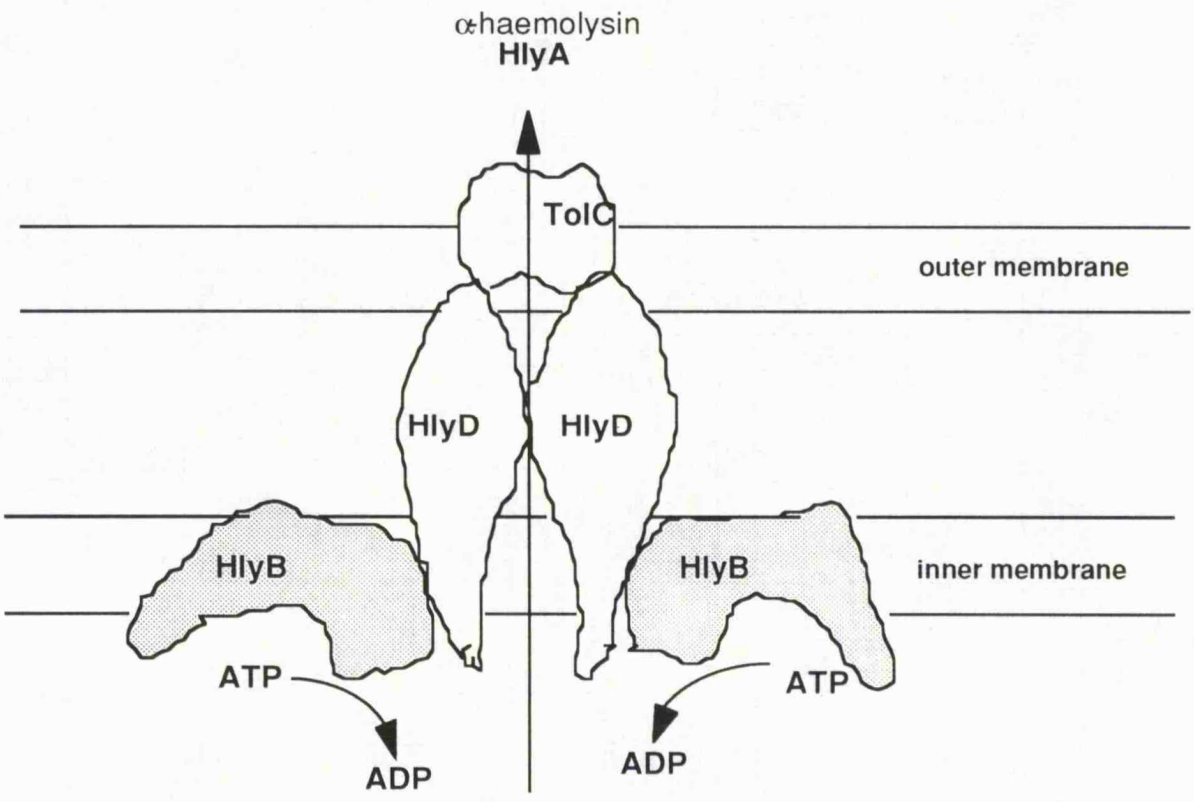


Figure 1.5: Structural model of ABC-mediated export of *E. coli* α-haemolysin (HlyA). HlyB is the membrane spanning (MS) and ATP-binding polypeptide, HlyD the accessory protein (AF) and TolC the outer membrane component, which is not encoded within the haemolysin operon. The MS/ATP polypeptide and AF are represented as dimers, consistent with the model of Higgins (1992). The figure is from Fath and Kolter (1993).

Table 1.3: Some Members of Bacterial ABC Transporters

ABC homologue	MFP/AF[a]	OMP[b]	Transported substrate	Organism	Reference
CvaB	CvaA	TolC	Colicin V (CvaC)	*E. coli*	Gilson *et al*. (1990)
HlyB	HlyD	TolC	α-hemolysin (HlyA)	*E. coli*	Felmlee *et al*. (1985)
HlyB	HlyD	TolC	α-hemolysin (HlyA)	*Proteus vulgaris*	Koronakis *et al*. (1988)
HlyB	HlyD	-[c]	α-hemolysin (HlyA	*Morganella morganii*	Koronakis *et al*. (1987)
PrtD	PrtE	PrtF	Protease C (PrtC)	*E. chrysanthemi*	Letoffe *et al*. (1990)
HasD	HasE	TolC	Haem acquisition protein (HasA)	*Serratia marcescens*	Letoffe *et al*. (1993, 1994)
KpsMT	?[d]	?	Capsular polysaccharide	*E. coli* K5	Smith *et al*. (1990)
KpsMT	?	?	Capsular polysaccharide	*E. coli* K1	Pavelka *et al*. (1991)
BexAB	?	?	Capsular polysaccharide	*H. influenzae*	Kroll *et al*. (1990)
CtrCD	?	?	Capsular polysaccharide	*N. meningitidis*	Frosch *et al*. (1991)
RfbAB	?	?	O-antigen side chain	*Klebsiella pneumoniae* O1	Bronner *et al*. (1994)
NdvA	?	?	β-1,2-glucan	*R. meliloti*	Stanfield *et al*. (1988)
ChvA	?	?	β-1,2-glucan	*A. tumefaciems*	Cangelosi *et al*. (1989)

a: MFP/AF, membrane fusion protein and accessory factor respectively
b: outer membrane protein
c: not required
d: unknown

1.6.2 Polysaccharide Export

Although the export of polysaccharide may differ significantly from protein export, conserved systems involved in their export processes do exist. The use of molecular genetic and biochemical techniques has begun to shed some light on the mechanisms involved in the export of polysaccharide.

It is generally assumed that assembly or polymerisation of capsular polysaccharide and some O antigen repeating units occurs at the inner face of the cytoplasmic membrane, using precursors synthesised in the cytosol (Boulnois and Jann, 1989; Kroncke *et al* ., 1990a,b; Whitfield and Valvano, 1993; Roberts, 1996). For other O antigens, polymerisation of the repeating unit is thought to be at the periplasmic face of the cytoplasmic membrane. This assembly complex is equally believed to be closely linked to the systems involved in the export of distinct polysaccharides (Roberts, 1996).

1.6.2.1 Export of Lipopolysaccharide (O-antigen)

The lipopolysaccharide of Gram-negative bacteria consists of three components: the lipid A, core oligosaccharide and the O antigen. The lipid A and core oligosaccharide are synthesised together, while the O antigen is independently synthesised (Jann and Jann, 1984). The O antigen component of the LPS consists of short oligosaccharide, O unit repeats.Two known mechanisms have been identified in the assembly of O antigens, which differ in the cellular location of their polymerisation steps and in the direction of chain elongation (Whitfield, 1995), and hence distinct export pathways. For each export pathway, after translocation across the cytoplasmic membrane, the cell surface expression of completed lipopolysaccharide is by a yet unidentified mechanism (Whitfield and Valvano, 1993).

In the chain length, Rol (Cld)- and Rfc-dependent polymerisation pathway, addition of the O units occurs at the reducing terminus (Brown *et al* ., 1992; Klena and Schnaitman, 1993; Wang and Reeves, 1994). The first mechanism involves the synthesis of the O units on a lipid carrier, undercaprenol phosphate (und-P) at the inner face of the cytoplasmic membrane (Jann and Jann, 1984). The galactosyltransferase RfbP enzyme catalyses the initiation reaction through interaction with und-P acceptor, and other Rfb enzymes catalyse the transfer of successive sugars to form lipid-linked O units (Klena and Schnaitman, 1993; Morona *et al* ., 1994; Liu *et al* ., 1995). Lipid-linked O units are then polymerised *en block* in a reaction requiring the Rfc protein

(Collins and Hackett, 1991; Schnaitman and Klena, 1993). The distribution of O antigen chain length in the Rfc-dependent polymerisation is controlled by the regulator of O-chain length, Rol (Batchelor *et al .*, 1991) sometimes referred to as the chain-length determinator, Cld (Bastin *et al .*, 1993). Polymerisation reactions occur at the periplasmic face of the cytoplasmic membrane (McGrath and Osborn, 1991), thus raising the question as to how the lipid-linked O units are transported across the inner membrane. Based on studies involving mutants in the *rfb* gene cluster, it has been suggested that RfbP, in addition to its galactosyltransferase role, may be acting as a 'flippase' transporting O units across the membrane (Wang and Reeves, 1994), where ligation of the O units to the lipid A-core oligosaccharide occurs.

The second pathway, Rol- and Rfc-independent polymerisation is currently only known to be involved in the synthesis of homopolymer O antigens of *E. coli* O8 and O9, and *Klebsiella pneumoniae* O1 (Whitfield, 1995). In this pathway Rfe and RfbF function only in initiating O antigen synthesis and this involves the transfer of a non-O-antigen residue to und-P to form the acceptor for monomers of the O antigen (Bronner *et al .*, 1994; Rick *et al .*, 1994; Clarke *et al .*, 1995). In the *E. coli* O8, the acceptor is und-P-P-Glc*p*NAc and GlcNAc is not a component of this O antigen (Rick *et al .*, 1994). Polymerisation in the Rfc-independent pathway occurs at the inner face of the cytoplasmic membrane and it involves the sequential addition of sugar monomers to the non-reducing end of the growing polypeptide chain (Zhang *et al .*, 1993; Bronner *et al .*, 1994). Subsequent translocation of the O antigen to the ligation site at the periplasmic face has been shown to require proteins that belong to the ABC transporter family described by Higgins (1992). In the *rfb* gene cluster of *K. pneumoniae* , two proteins RfbA and B have been identified as members of the ABC family of exporters involved in the translocation of the polymerised O unit across the cytoplasmic membrane (Bronner *et al .*, 1994). A similar mechanism involving ABC transporters is seen in the export of group II polysaccharide (see below).

1.6.2.2 Export of Group II Capsular Polysaccharide (K antigen)

Much of what is known about the biosynthesis and export of group II K antigens comes from studies of group II capsule genes, particularly those from *E. coli* K1 and K5 serotypes. The export of group II capsular polysaccharide is presented therefore in the light of what is known from

these two gene clusters and where necessary the export mechanism in other bacteria will be mentioned.

Proteins encoded by regions 1 and 3 are involved in the export of group II capsular polysaccharides in *E. coli* (Smith *et al* ., 1990; Pavelka *et al* ., 1991; Pazzani *et al* ., 1993; Wunder *et al* ., 1994). Mutations within region 3 genes result in cytoplasmic polysaccharide of lower molecular weight than the cell surface expressed polymer, which are associated with the inner face of the cytoplasmic membrane (Boulnois *et al* ., 1987; Kroncke *et al* ., 1990; Smith *et al* ., 1990; Pavelka *et al* ., 1994; Pigeon and Silver, 1994). This observation is consistent with the synthesis of polysaccharide occurring on the inner face of the cytoplasmic membrane and the role of encoded proteins in export of polysaccharide across the cytoplasmic membrane (Boulnois and Jann, 1989; Boulnois and Roberts, 1990). Analysis of the predicted amino acid sequence of the encoded KpsM and T proteins revealed that they are members of the ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporters (Smith *et al* ., 1990; Pavelka *et al* ., 1991) (Table1.3). The two proteins are homologous to BexAB proteins encoded in *H. influenzae cap* locus and the CtrCD proteins of the *N. meningitidis* capsule gene cluster and constitute an inner membrane polysaccharide export system in these bacteria (Kroll *et al* ., 1990; Smith *et al* ., 1990; Frosch *et al* ., 1991; Pavelka *et al* ., 1991, 1994; Reizer *et al* ., 1992). Mutations in region 3 of the K5 capsule gene cluster can be complemented by cloned genes from *Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae* (Ward and Inzana, 1995), suggesting that there is conservation in the ABC transport systems involved in group II polysaccharide export in Gram-negative bacteria.

In the ABC-mediated export of group II polysaccharide in *E. coli* , the KpsT protein is the ATP-binding component while the KpsM is the integral membrane-spanning unit. Interaction between KpsT and ATP was demonstrated in structure-function studies of KpsT mutants and binding of photolabelled analogues of ATP (Pavelka *et al* ., 1994). Hydropathy plot of the predicted amino acid sequence indicated that the KpsM protein contains six hydrophobic membrane spanning domains interspersed with short stretches of hydrophilic residues (Smith *et al* ., 1990; Pavelka *et al* ., 1991). Topological analysis using gene fusion approaches confirmed this six membrane spanning organisation, with the N- and C-terminal domains in the cytoplasm (Pigeon and Silver, 1994). Site-directed mutagenesis and linker-insertion identified the N-terminus, the first cytoplasmic loop and a small hydrophobic domain (SV-SVI linker) near the C-terminus as regions that are important for KpsM function (Pigeon and Silver, 1994). Thus, the KpsM and

T structures are consistent with the model of an ABC transporter having a polytopic integral membrane protein and an ATP-binding protein (Higgins, 1992), where KpsT presumably functions in hydrolysing ATP in the KpsM-mediated export of group II polysaccharide (Smith *et al .*, 1990; Pavelka *et al .*, 1991, 1994; Pigeon and Silver, 1994).

Region 1 of the *kps* gene cluster encodes proteins that are involved in the cell surface expression of group II polysaccharide in *E. coli* (Boulnois and Roberts, 1990; Silver and Vimr, 1990; Pazzani *et al .*, 1993a,b). Mutations within the *kpsE* and *D* genes result in periplasmic accumulated polysaccharide (Boulnois *et al .*, 1987; Bronner *et al .*, 1993a) suggesting a role for the KpsE and D proteins in the export of polysaccharide across the periplasmic space. The KpsE protein is homologous and shares similar hydropathy plot profile to the BexC protein of *H. influenzae* and the CtrB protein of *N. meningitidis* , both of which are have been implicated in the export of polysaccharide in these bacteria (Kroll *et al .*, 1990; Frosch *et al .*, 1991). Antiserum has been raised against the purified KpsE protein of *E. coli* K5 (Rosenow *et al .*, 1995a). The protein has been shown to localise in the membrane, and preliminary data on the topology indicated that KpsE has an amino terminus in the cytoplasm and a large periplasmic domain of approximately 302 amino acids (Esumeh and Roberts, 1995; Rosenow *et al .*, 1995a). The large periplasmic domain is likely to interact with the KpsD protein and may be functionally important in the export of polysaccharide to the cell surface.

KpsD is a periplasmic protein with a typical N-terminal signal sequence (Pazzani *et al .*, 1993a,b; Wunder *et al .*, 1994). The predicted amino acid sequence of KpsD is not homologous to proteins encoded in either the *H. influenzae* and *N. meningitidis* capsule gene clusters (Pazzani *et al .*, 1993a,b), but is homologous to the ExoF protein which is involved in the expression of succinoglycan in *Rhizobium meliloti* (Muller *et al .*, 1993). Thus the precise role of KpsD in polysaccharide export is not fully elucidated, but mutants lacking the encoded product are not capable of exporting polysaccharide to the cell surface (Bronner *et al .*, 1993a; Wunder *et al .*, 1994). Outer membrane proteins are not encoded in the group II capsule gene clusters of *E. coli* and it is possible that the KpsD protein may be acting in a similar role analogous to outer membrane proteins in the cell surface expression of group II capsule.

The KpsC and S proteins are localised to the cytoplasm and are associated with the inner face of the cytoplasmic membrane (Rigg and Roberts unpublished). Analysis of mutations in either the *kpsC* or *S* genes revealed cells with polysaccharide that lack both phospholipid and KDO, located within 'holes' in the cytoplasm (Bronner *et al* ., 1993a,b). Phospholipid and KDO are usually found at the reducing end of cell surface expressed polysaccharide (Kroncke *et al* ., 1990; Finke *et al* ., 1991). The KpsC and S proteins are respectively homologous to LipA and B proteins encoded in the capsule gene cluster of *N. meningitidis* and both Lip proteins have been proposed to function in lipid substitution (Frosch and Muller, 1993). Based on results obtained from the KpsC and S mutants, it was suggested that phosphatidyl-KDO might form a structural motif that is recognised prior to export of polysaccharide across the cytoplasmic membrane by the KpsM and T proteins (Roberts, 1995). The exact functions of these two proteins are yet to be demonstrated.

The *kpsU* gene encodes a protein of 27 kDa that have been suggested to provide KDO for the synthesis of 2-phosphatidyl-KDO, needed for ligation to the polysaccharide chain (Bronner *et al* ., 1993a). In the K5 capsule gene cluster, mutations in *kpsE* and *kpsD* genes result in the accumulation of phosphatidyl-KDO-linked polysaccharide at the cell surface and in the periplasm, whereas polysaccharide in the cytoplasm lacks phosphatidyl-KDO (Bronner *et al* ., 1993a). This has led to the suggestion that phosphatidyl-KDO substitution of the K5 polysaccharide is a prerequisite for translocation of the polysaccharide (Roberts, 1995, 1996), as is the case with *N. meningitidis* capsular polysaccharide where phosphatidic acid substitution has been demonstrated (Frosch and Muller, 1993). However, *kpsU* mutants express some capsular polysaccharide at the cell surface, indicating that this is likely not the case. Therefore, the role of KpsU in the cell surface expression of capsular polysaccharide in *E. coli* remains poorly defined.

The mechanisms involved in the export of group II polysaccharide are beginning to unfold. The observation of a conserved system involved in the export processes in other Gram-negative bacteria has helped to facilitate research into export of the K5 capsular polysaccharide. Albeit there is a conserved theme in the export process, significant differences do exist. For example, the lack of periplasmic protein in *N. meningitidis* and *H. influenzae* , and an outer membrane protein in *E. coli* and the role of KDO in the transport process raises interesting questions as to the organisation of the processes involved in the last stages of cell surface expression of group II

capsular antigens. The analysis of proteins encoded by region 1 genes will help to further our understanding on the cell surface expression of the K5 antigen.

1.7 Capsule-specific Bacteriophages

Binding of the phage to the bacterial cell is often the first and crucial step in bacteriophage infection. This action is as a result of specific interaction between the phage and its receptor on the bacterial cell surface (Makela, 1985). Hence, one can test for the presence or absence of such receptors by using a set of phages whose receptor specificities are known. According to Makela (1985) this has proved to be a useful approach in the study of several bacterial cell surface structures and mutants lacking these structures. The receptor specificity of a phage is determined by its binding protein, which usually is the tail fibre or part of it. Some phages especially the large DNA phages have been shown to have two sets of tail fibres which have different binding specificities (Zorzopulos *et al* ., 1982).

Bacteriophage infection and the subsequent killing of the first target bacterium usually means liberation of a burst of new phage particles that bind to other bacteria in the vicinity and the result is a plaque of lysis in a lawn of bacterial growth. However, bacteria can be resistant to the killing action of a phage even after phage binding to specific receptor (Pelkonen *et al.*, 1992). In the absence of specific receptor, the most common cause of such resistance is immunity conferred by a resident prophage (Duckworth *et al* ., 1981). Other mechanisms of resistance which are only but poorly understood include 'superinfection exclusion' at the bacterial cell surface, restriction by endonuclease action and abortive infection (Makela, 1985).

Capsular polysaccharides of bacteria often interact with bacteriophages, either by blocking access to phage receptor sites beneath or by providing specific adsorption sites. A number of bacteriophages specific for *E. coli* capsular polysaccharides (K phages) have been described (Stirm, 1968; Stirm and Freund-Molbert, 1971; Lindberg, 1977). These K phages are very specific; they do not bind to noncapsulated mutants nor to related strains with different capsular structures and thus of different serotype (Jann and Jann, 1983). Structuraly identical capsular polysaccharide from different bacterial strains will be sensitive to the same phage. This is exemplified by the K54 capsular antigens of *Klebsiella aerogenes* A3 and that of *E. coli* O8:K27, both a receptor

for the bacteriophage F34 (Sutherland, 1977; Sutherland *et al* ., 1970). The two polysaccharides are very similar with the same backbone structure but substituted with galactose in *E. coli* K27 instead of glucose in *K. aerogenes* K54 antigen (Conrad *et al* ., 1966).

As a result of their binding specificity, the capsule-specific phages can be used as indicators of the presence of certain structures in the polysaccharide. The identification of polysaccharide structures from a number of bacteria including *E. coli* (Gross *et al* ., 1977; Gupta *et al* ., 1982) species of *Klebsiella* (Ravenscroft *et al* ., 1987; Parolis *et al* ., 1988), *Azotobacter* (Pike and Wyss, 1975; Davidson *et al* ., 1977) and *Rhizobium* (Barnet and Humphrey, 1975; Amemura *et al* ., 1983) have benefited from this approach. For polysaccharide structures that are poor immunogens, capsule-specific phages can be used in identification of bacteria responsible for infection. For instance, it is particularly difficult to prepare high titre antisera to the *E. coli* K1 and K5 capsular types (Jann and Jann, 1983), and the K1- or K5-specific phages are of great value in the serotyping of these strains (Gross *et al* ., 1977; Nimmich *et al* ., 1981; Gupta *et al* ., 1982). The K phages have been employed with great success in the epidemiological studies of bacterial etiologic agents, notably in the typing of *Staphylococcus aureus* (Blair and Williams, 1961), *Salmonella* (Wilkinson *et al* ., 1972; Lindberg, 1977; Hickman-Brenner *et al* ., 1991), *Yersinia* (Kawaoka *et al* .,1983) and *E. coli* (Lindberg, 1977). Capsule-specific phages have also been used to isolate non-capsulated mutants (Stirm, 1968).

Bacteriophage specificity is not restricted to the K antigens. Phages with binding specificities to lipopolysaccharide (O phages) such as the ε15, ε34 and Ω8 phages (Kanegasaki and Wright, 1973; Reske *et al* ., 1973; Prehm and Jann, 1976) and rough (R) antigens like the classical T phages (T3, T4, T7) (Prehm *et al* ., 1976) have been described. The O phages are the most frequently isolated phages from sewage or other sources when using indicator bacteria with O antigen as host (Makela, 1985). The commonly used transducing phage P22 of *Salmonella* is a good example of the specificity of the O phages. It requires smooth type LPS with long O side chains as opposed to semirough (SR) or rough (R) mutants (Makela and Stocker, 1984). Most of the phages used for typing in clinical epidemiological investigations of *Yersinia enterocolitica* are O-specific (Kawaoka *et al* ., 1983). The specificity of phages that bind to the LPS core (R-specific) have been best studied in *Salmonella typhimurium* (Wilkinson *et al* ., 1972) and have been used in the characterisation of R mutants (Makela and Stocker, 1984). In fact, as reported by Makela (1985) the

R-specific phage, FO is useful for differentiation of *rfa* mutants (with the exception of *rfaL*) with incomplete LPS core from other R types. Many of the phages that bind to the core LPS do not bind to smooth (S) bacteria due to steric hindrance exerted by the O polysaccharide (Makela, 1985).

1.7.1 Bacteriophage Lyases Specific for Capsules

Capsule phages has been shown to first bind to receptors in the capsule or O polysaccharide remote from the outer membrane surface and then specifically depolymerise the polysaccharide to which they are bound (Stirm and Freund-Molbert, 1971; Lindberg, 1977). The depolymerising enzyme is borne in the spikes or tail fibre of the phage and it is required both for binding and degradation of bacterial polysaccharide for the phage to reach the cell surface (Stirm, 1968; Stirm and Freund-Molbert, 1971). This depolymerisation event of the polysaccharide has been elegantly demonstrated by electron microscopy (Bayer *et al* ., 1979; Bayer and Bayer, 1994). A large number of bacteriophage-associated enzymes which degrade carbohydrate-containing polymers on the bacterial cell surface have been described and a few of these are polysaccharide lyases (Sutherland, 1995).

In general, all lyase enzymes that cleave anionic polysaccharide polymers exhibit a common mode of action, by a β-elimination mechanism. The specificity of these lyases is related to this eliminase mechanism (Linhardt *et al* ., 1986; Desai *et al* ., 1993), by which certain glycosidic (usually 1,4 β- or 1,4 α-linked) bonds between hexosamine and uronic acid are cleaved (Jandik *et al* ., 1994; Sutherland, 1995). A product of this cleavage is a modified non-reducing terminus to form unsaturated uronic acid and this UV chromophore formed in the non-reducing termini of the small oligosaccharide products is useful for their detection (Jandik *et al* ., 1994). Most of the enzymes, with the exception of xanthan lyases (Lesley, 1961) are randomly endolytic in their action, cleaving the main chain of the polysaccharide structure (Jandik *et al* ., 1994; Sutherland, 1995). The products of lyase action may in a few cases be monosaccharides but are more commonly oligosaccharides ranging in size from a degree of polymerisation (DP) of 2 to 5. Polysaccharide lyases act on various substrates which may be found in either eukaryotes or prokaryotes, the later source according to Sutherland (1995) providing most diverse range of substrates. A few of the polysaccharide substrates are common or similar to both types of organisms and thus will be cleaved to some degree of specificity by the same enzyme. Notable among these substrates are the polysialic acid which is a polymer

present in both humans and the bacteria *E. coli* K1 and *N. meningitidis* serogroup B strains (Livingston *et al .*, 1988; Troy, 1992). Heparin and desulphatoheparin which are common in eukaryotes has similar structure to *E. coli* K5 polymer (Vann *et al .*, 1981; Casu *et al .*, 1994). Likewise, the *E. coli* K4 antigen has the structure of a chondroitin backbone to which D-fructosyl side chain residues are attached (Rodriguez *et al .*, 1988).

Among the polysaccharide lyases found in phage preparations are alginate lyases (Davidson *et al .*, 1977a) and those cleaving various linkages in both homo- and hetero-polymers produced by several bacterial species including *S. aureus* (Farrel *et al .*, 1995), *Streptococcus* (Niemann *et al .*, 1976; Hynes and Feretti, 1989), *Rhizobium trifolii* (Barnet and Humphrey, 1975; Higashi and Abe, 1978; Hollingsworth *et al .*, 1984), *Klebsiella* (Ravenscroft *et al .*, 1987; Parolis *et al .*, 1988), *Pseudomonas* (Davidson *et al .*, 1977a,b) and *E. coli* (Stirm and Freund-Molbert, 1971; Hallenbeck *et al .*, 1987; Petter and Vimr, 1993; Long *et al .*, 1993, 1995; Gerardy-Schahn *et al .*, 1995). The *Azotobacter vinelandii* phage-borne lyase enzyme was shown to degrade alginate rich in mannuronate residues (Davidson *et al .*, 1977a) yielding oligosaccharide products containing mannuronate and unsaturated uronic acid and guluronate residues (Davidson *et al .*, 1977b). The hyaluronate lyase borne by streptococcal bacteriophage described by Niemann *et al* (1976) yielded a tetrasaccharide and an octasaccharide along with two higher oligomers from its substrate. Each oligosaccharide were characterised by the unsaturated uronic acid at the non-reducing end and N-acetyl glucosamine at the reducing terminus. Lyases found in virulent phage lysates of *R. trifolii* have been used for structural analysis of the repeating unit of the *R. trifolii* polysaccharide (Amemura *et al .*, 1983; Hingsworth *et al .*, 1984). The enzyme cleaves a 1,4 β-D-glucosyl-D-glucuronic acid linkages with resultant oligosaccharide products composed of D-glucose: D-galactose: D-glucuronic acid: 4-deoxy-L-threo-hex-4-enopyranosyluronic acid in the ratio 5:1:1:1. These oligosaccharides have been found to be biologically active products capable of binding trifolin A and stimulating root hair infection in clover (Abe *et al .*, 1984).

A number of polysaccharide lyases from bacteriophages useful in the structural analysis of capsular polysaccharides from *E. coli* have been identified. The enzyme from *E. coli* K28 phage cleaves the α-D-glucosyl (1,4)-β-D-glucuronic acid linkage in the acetylated tetrasaccharide repeat unit of the polysaccharide (Altman *et al .*, 1986). The lyase from *Klebsiella* phage ϕ5 was capable of cleaving the β-D-mannosyl (1,4)-β-D- glucuronic acid linkage

in the *E. coli* K55 polysaccharide (Anderson and Parolis, 1989). In the trisaccharide repeat unit of the K55 antigen structure, the mannose carried 4,6-linked pyruvate ketals (on up to 40% of residues) and O-2-acetyl groups, whereas the *Klebsiella* K5 polymer (which is also degraded by the same phage) carried only an O-2-acetyl group on the glucose residue. Thus the specificity of this enzyme is on the linkage in the backbone structure.

In all, the action of lyase enzymes provides oligosaccharide products that are more amenable to structural analysis by physical methods. Of special interest are the phage-borne lyases specific for the low molecular weight K antigens, particularly the K1 and K5 antigens of *E. coli* .

1.7.1.1 Bacteriophage-borne Lyase Specific for *E. coli* K1 Capsule

Several bacteriophages specific for polysialic acid capsule of *E. coli* K1 have been described (Gross *et al* ., 1977; Kwiatkowski *et al* ., 1982, 1983; Hallenbeck *et al* ., 1987). The phages designated members of the PK1 family recognise the capsular polysialic acid as a primary cell surface receptor by their capsule-degrading endosialidases, cleaving their substrate by a common endo-eliminase mechanism (Kwiatkowski *et al* ., 1982; Fine and Makela, 1985; Hallenbeck *et al* ., 1987; Pelkonen *et al* ., 1989). *E. coli* K1 has been implicated in a number of infections (Robbins *et al* ., 1974) with high mortality rates in cases of meningitis (Robbins *et al* ., 1974; Ørskov *et al* ., 1977). As cited by Long *et al.* (1995), it was proposed by Taylor (1987) that the PK1 phage-induced endosialidase could be used in the diagnosis and therapy of *E. coli* K1 meningitis, septicaemia or bacteraemia due to the enzyme's high specificity for hydrolysing α-2,8-sialosyl linkages of the K1 polymer. Polysialic acid is an oncodevelopmental antigen in human kidney and brain and may contribute to the invasive and mestatic potential of some tumors (Livingstone *et al* ., 1988; Roth *et al* ., 1988). Thus as reported by Tomlinson and Taylor (1985) bacteriophage E endosialidase has the potential of being used as probe for neoplastic tissues displaying the polysialic acid marker.

To date phages that recognise the K1 capsule are the only known source of polysialic acid lyase (Kwiatkowski *et al* ., 1983; Finne and Makela, 1985). Most of the phage-borne enzymes have been purified and shown to depolymerise both O-acetylated and non-O-acetylated α-2,8-linked homopolymers of N-acetylneuraminic acid from a variety of sources (Tomlinson and Taylor, 1985; Hallenbeck *et al* ., 1987; Long *et al* ., 1993). Limited lyase activity was observed when the alternating α-2,8 and α-2,9- linked N-acetylneuraminic

acid homopolymer of *E. coli* K92 antigen was used as substrate (Tomlinson and Taylor, 1985). In the studies reported by Hallenbeck *et al* (1987) both oligo- and poly-sialosyl units were substrates and examination of the intermediate products showed that cleavage occurred at random sites on the polysialosyl chains, as opposed to progressive depolymerisation from an initiated cleavage site at one end. Some of the genes encoding these enzymes have been cloned and the amino acid sequence determined (Petter and Vimr, 1993; Gerardy-Schahn *et al* ., 1995; Long *et al* ., 1995), and detail analysis of the encoded proteins will further our understanding on the structural-functional relationship of this group of polysaccharide lyases.

1.7.1.2 Bacteriophage-borne Lyase Specific for *E. coli* K5 Capsule

Gupta *et al* . (1982) reported the isolation of a phage specific for the K5 antigen, to aid in the clinical diagnosis of infections caused by *E. coli* K5 strains. They also found that this phage was capable of degrading the *E. coli* K5 polysaccharide. The capsular polysaccharide from *E. coli* K5 strain is formed from disaccharide repeating units of 4-β-D-glucuronosyl-1,4-α-N-acetyl-D-glucosamine and essentially represents a structural intermediate of heparin biosynthesis (Vann *et al* ., 1981) and is similar to other intermediates required as substrates to generate products with high affinity for antithrombin activity (Casu *et al* ., 1994). The K5 polymer and those of heparin are substrates for polysaccharide lyases (Linhardt *et al* ., 1986; Lohse and Linhardt, 1992; Jandik *et al* ., 1994).

The K5 phage-borne degrading enzyme was recently characterised and shown to be a lyase, cleaving its substrate through a β-eliminative mechanism, and yielding oligosaccharides characterised mainly of hexa-, octa- and decsaccharides with 4,5-unsaturated glucuronic acid ($\Delta^{4,5}$GlcA) at their nonreducing end (Hänfling *et al* ., 1996). The few documented reports on lyases that are specific for heparin or heparin-like compounds come from the use of the bacterium *Flavobacterium heparinum*. Three distinct lyases have been purified from this bacterium (Lohse and Linhardt, 1992). These are heparin lyase I (EC 4.2.2.7), II (no EC number) and III (heparitinase, EC 4.2.2.8) with corresponding molecular weights of 42.8, 84.1 and 70.8 KDa. All had high alkaline pH optima in the range of 9.0-10.0 and isoelectric points of 8.9 to 10.1.

The heparin lyases from *F. heparinum* act in a random endolytic fashion and their specificity is releated to cleavage of the glycosidic linkages between

hexosamine and uronic acid to yield oligosaccharide products characterised by unsaturated uronic acid residues at the non-reducing end (Jandik *et al* ., 1994). The three heparin lyases act on heparan sulphate, with heparin lyase I degrading the substrate much more slowly and all but heparin lyase III act on heparin (Linhardt *et al* ., 1982; Jandik *et al* ., 1994) (Figure 1.6). Lyases with specificity for heparin and heparan sulphate have found many applications including the determination of structure of such polymers (Linhardt *et al* ., 1991, 1992), preparation of new therapeutic agents (Linhardt *et al* ., 1988; Casu *et al* ., 1994) and the analysis of glycosaminoglycans found in tissues and biological fluids (Linhardt *et al* ., 1992).

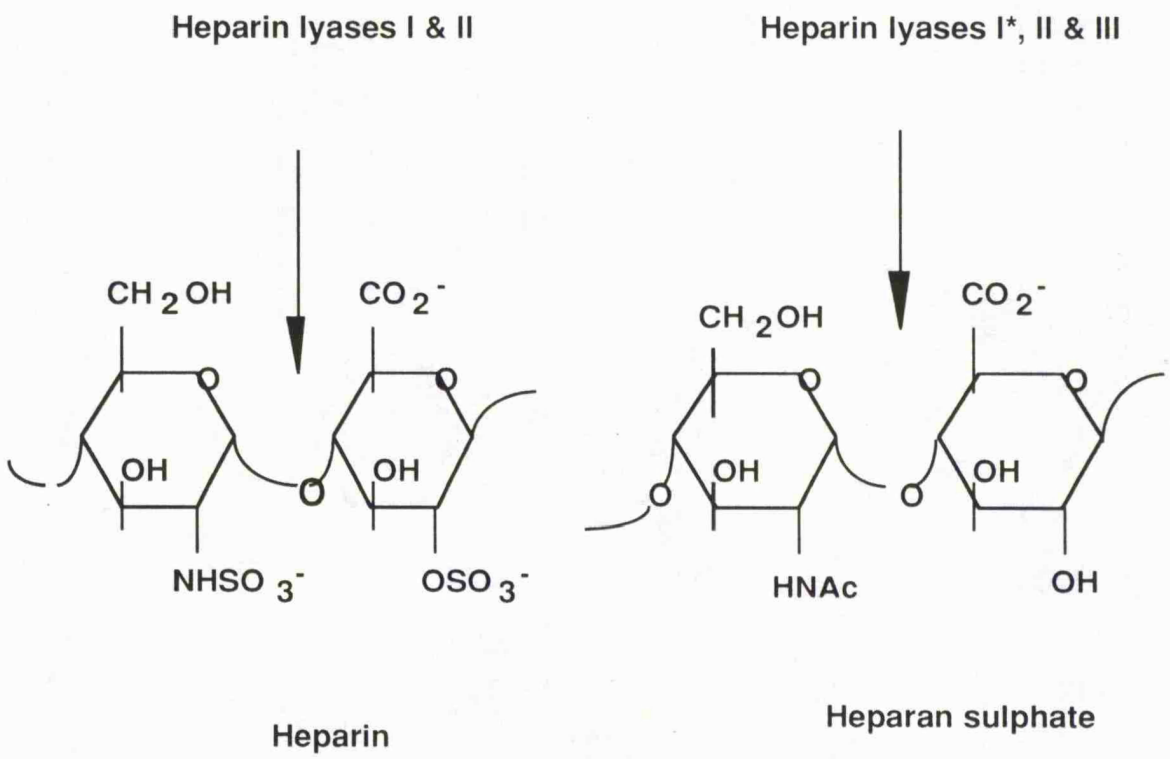


Figure 1.6: Action pattern of heparin lyases on both heparin and heparan sulphate. Arrows indicate site of cleavage by the polysaccharide lyases, and the asterik denotes the slow action of heparin lyase I on heparan sulphate. Figure was adapted from Jandik *et al* . (1994).

Unlike in *E. coli* K1, where phages represent the only source of lyase enzyme specific for the capsule, certain strains of *E. coli* K5 are known to express lyase enzyme that are specific for the K5 polysaccharide. These strains include *E. coli* O4:K5, O10:K5 and O117:K5 (K. Jann, personal communication). The encoded enzymes in these strains have not been studied in detail, but it is known that these K5 strains express low molecular weight capsular polysaccharide (K. Jann, personal communication).

Aims

The aims of this thesis are two fold. First, to determine the topology of the KpsE protein. Secondly, to clone, determine the nucleotide sequence, and overexpress the K5-specific bacteriophage-borne lyase enzyme. The usefulness of this enzyme in the study of K5 polysaccharide will be highlighted.

Chapter 2

Materials and Methods

2.1 Bacterial Strains and Plasmids

The bacterial strains and plasmids that were used in this study are listed in tables 2.1 and 2.2 respectively.

Table 2.1: Bacterial Strains

Strain	Genotype	Source/Reference
E. coli LE392	F^-, *hsd*R514(r^-k,m^+k), *Sup*E44, *Sup*F58, *lac*Y1, *gal*K2, *gal*T22, *met*B1, *trp* R55,λ^-	Murray *et al* ., 1977
E. coli JM101	*sup*E,*thi* Δ(*lac* -*pro*AB), F'[*tra*D36, *pro*AB^+, *lac*I^q, *lac*ZΔM15]	Yanisch-Perron *et al* ., 1985
E. coli JM109(DE3)	e14$^-$(*mcr* A), *rec*A1, *end*A1, *gyr* A96, *hsd* R17(r^-_k,m^+_k), *sup*E44, *thi* Δ(*lac* -*pro*AB), F'[*tra*D36, *pro*AB^+, *lac*I^qZΔM15], λ(DE3)	Yanisch-Perron *et al* ., 1985
E. coli SURE™	*mcr* A, Δ(*mcr* BC-*hsd* RMS-*mrr*)171, *sup* E44, *thi* 1, λ, *gyr* A96, *rel* A1, *lac* , *rec* B, *rec* J, *sbc* C, *umu* C::Tn5 (*kan* ^{r}), *uvr* C, {F', *pro* AB^+, *lac* I^qZΔM15, Tn10 (*tet*)}	Stratagen® Cloning Systems
E. coli CC118	*ara*D139, (*ara*, *leu*)7697, *lac* X74, *phoA* Δ20, *gal*E, *gal*K, *thi* , *rps*E, *rpo*B, *arg* E_{am}, *rec* A1	Michaelis *et al* ., 1983
E. coli SM10λ*pir*	F^-, *thi* -1, *thr* -1, *leu* B6, *sup*E44, *ton*A 21, *lac*Y 1, *recA* ::RP4-2-Tc::Mu Km^r)	Simon *et al* ., 1983

Table 2.1 (continued)

Strain	Genotype	Source/Reference
E. coli SY327λ*pir*	F$^-$, *ara* D, Δ(*lac-pro*), *arg* E$_{am}$, *rec* A56, *rif* ^{r}, *nal* A	Miller and Mekalanos, 1988
E. coli MS101	*rpsL* , *serA* $^+$, K5$^+$	Stevens *et al* ., 1994
E. coli MSFE100	*rpsL* , *serA* $^+$, Δ*kpsE* , K5$^-$	This study

Table 2.2: Plasmids used in this study

Plasmid	Characteristic	Source/Reference
pTTQ18*	Ap^R. Cloning and expression vector	Stark, 1987
pYZ4	Km^R. Cloning and expression vector	Zhang and Broome-Smith, 1990
pLH21	Cm^R . Contains BlaM cassette	Broome-Smith
pUC19	Ap^R. High copy number cloning vector	Yanisch-Perron *et al* ., 1985
pGEM-3Zf$^+$	Ap^R. Phagemid cloning and expression vector	Promega Corps, 1991
pACYC184	Cm^R. Cloning vector	Chang and Cohen, 1987
pRT733	Km^R. Suicide vector, λ*pir* , Tn*phoA*	Taylor *et al* ., 1989
pCVD422	Ap^R. Suicide vector, λ*pir* , *sacB*	Donnenberg and Kaper, 1991
pPC6	Cm^R Cloned *E. coli* K5 capsule gene cluster except *kpsF* in pACYC184	Pazzani, 1993
pH18	Ap^R. *Hind* III fragment encoding region 1 minus *kpsF* of *E. coli* K5 capsule gene cluster in pUC18	Pazzani, 1993
pCR6	Ap^R. *Sma* I-*Hinc* II *kpsE* fragment in pCE30	Rosenow *et al* ., 1995a

2.1.1 Growth Conditions and Media

Bacteria were routinely grown at 37°C in Luria broth (LB; 0.5%$^{w}/_{v}$ NaCl, 0.5%$^{w}/_{v}$ yeast extract, and 1%$^{w}/_{v}$ trypticase peptone) with 1.5%$^{w}/_{v}$ bacteriological agar (BBL) added as required. M9 minimal medium (0.6%$^{w}/_{v}$ $Na_2HPO_4.7H_2O$, 0.3%$^{w}/_{v}$ KH_2PO_4, 0.05%$^{w}/_{v}$ NaCl, 0.1%$^{w}/_{v}$ NH_4Cl, 0.4%$^{w}/_{v}$ glucose, 10mM $MgCl_2$, 10μgml^{-1} thiamine) with 1.5%$^{w}/_{v}$ agar was used where necessary. For soft top agar 0.6%$^{w}/_{v}$ agar was used. Where necessary media were supplemented with appropriate antibiotics at the following concentrations: ampicillin 100μgml^{-1}, chloramphenicol 25μgml^{-1}, kanamycin 25μgml^{-1}, streptomycin 25μgml^{-1}, and tetracycline 25μgml^{-1}. Antibiotics and amino acids were purchased from Sigma Chemical Company Ltd. Solid agar media were supplemented with 0.2$mgml^{-1}$ X-gal and 1mM IPTG (Novabiochem), and XP (Sigma) where required.

Bacterial cells were harvested by centrifugation at 3300g for 5 mins at 4°C in Sorval centrifuge (Dupont). Small volumes of culture were centrifuged in a bench top minifuge at 13,400g for 5 mins at room temperature.

2.1.2 Phage Assay

Cells were grown to mid-logarithmic phase at 37°C with shaking at 200rpm, harvested and then resuspended in 10mM $MgSO_4$ solution. Resuspended cells were incubated with dilutions of capsule-specific phage at ambient temperature for 20 mins. Soft top agar was added and then overlaid onto L-agar plates containing the appropriate antibiotics. Plates were allowed to set, then incubated at 37°C and examined after 5 hours and overnight for plaques.

2.1.3 Determination of Ampicillin Resistance of *E. coli* JM101 Producing KpsE-BlaM Hybrid Proteins

The minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) required to prevent colony formation by single cell was determined based on the method described by Broome-Smith and Pratt (1986). Overnight cultures of *E. coli* JM101

harbouring different *kpsE-blaM* clones were serially diluted in L-broth to provide 10^{-1}-10^{-9} dilutions. A drop corresponding to 5µl from these dilutions were spotted on different segments of L-agar plates containing Kanamycin (25µgml^{-1}), IPTG (1mM final concentration) and various range (5µgml^{-1}-200µgml^{-1}) of Ampicillin. The formation of a single colony was examined after overnight incubation at 37°C.

2.2 Transfer of Plasmid DNA into Bacterial Cells

Bacterial cells were transformed using variations of either the Calcium chloride ($CaCl_2$) (Mandel and Higa, 1970) or the high efficiency electroporation (Dower *et al* ., 1988) methods. DNA was also delivered into bacterial cells through conjugation.

2.2.1 Calcium Chloride Method

In the $CaCl_2$ method, 100µl of an overnight culture grown at 37°C was diluted 1:100 in 10ml of L-broth and grown at 37°C with shaking to mid-exponential phase (OD_{600}~0.5). Cells were harvested (3300g at 4°C for 5 mins), washed once in 10ml of ice-cold 10mM NaCl solution, pelleted and resuspended in 4ml ice-cold 100mM $CaCl_2$. The cells were made competent by incubation on ice for 30 mins and collected by gentle centrifugation (1800g for 5 mins at 4°C). Pelleted cells were resuspended in 1ml ice-cold 100mM $CaCl_2$ and then used immediately in transformation. For transformation, 100µl aliquot of competent cells was mixed with 5-20µl of plasmid DNA and placed on ice for 1 hr. Cells were heat shocked at 42°C for 3 mins and then immediately mixed with 0.5ml L-broth. The transformed cells were incubated at 37°C for 1 hr, after which 100µl aliquot was plated unto each L-agar plates containing the appropriate antibiotics. Plates were then incubated overnight at 37°C.

2.2.2 Electrotransformation Method

For electrotransformation 100µl of an overnight culture was back-diluted 1:100 with 10ml of L-broth and grown to mid-exponential phase (OD_{600}~0.5). Cells were pelleted by centrifugation at 3300g for 10 mins at

4°C. Pelleted cells were washed three times in 10ml of ice-cold nanopure water and then once in 10% $^{v}/_{v}$ glycerol with centrifugation between washes. The cell pellet was resuspended in 80µl of 10% glycerol and used immediately in transformation. Aliquots of 1-2µl of DNA was then mixed with 40µl of the competent cells and transfered into an ice-cold 2mm Gene Pulser™ cuvette (Biorad). A high voltage was delivered through the sample using a Biorad Gene Pulser™ with pulse control parameters at 25µF capacitance, 200 Ω resistance and 2.4KV voltage. Time constants were typically in the range of 4.6-4.8 msec, depending on the purity (salt content) of the DNA samples. Immediately after pulsing a ml of ice-cold SOC recovery medium ($20gl^{-1}$ trypticase peptone, $5gl^{-1}$ yeast extract, $0.57gl^{-1}$ 10mM NaCl, $0.175gl^{-1}$ 2.5mM KCl, $2.025gl^{-1}$ 10mM $MgCl_2$, $2.45gl^{-1}$ 10mM $MgSO_4$, $3.6gl^{-1}$ 20mM glucose) was mixed with cells, followed by incubation for 1 hr at 37°C before plating out 100µl aliquots unto each L-agar plates containing the appropriate antibiotics.

2.2.3 Conjugation Procedures

2.2.3.1 Tn*phoA* Mutagenesis

Random *phoA* insertions were generated in plasmid DNA using filter mating experiments between the recipient (*E. coli* LE392pCR6) and the donor (*E. coli* SM10λ*pir* pRT733) strains. Plasmid pRT733 is a suicide vector (Table 2.2) based upon the λ*pir* system and thus can only replicate in a Pir^+ background and have been described (Manoil and Beckwith, 1985). Briefly, the donor and recipient were grown to OD_{600}~0.4. Cells from 1ml of each culture were pelleted together and resuspended in 50µl of L-broth. The suspension was then spread over a microcellulose filter (Hybond-C, Amersham) on L-agar plates. Plates were incubated at 37°C and cells washed off the filter after 4 hrs with 1x M9 salt solution. Conjugants resulting from the mating were selected on M9 salt minimal medium containing the required antibiotics. Plasmid DNA extracted from conjugants was used to transform *E. coli* CC118 and $PhoA^+$ mutants were identified as blue colonies on L-agar plates containing the chromogenic substrate, 5-bromo-4-chloro-3-indonyl phosphate (XP; $40µgml^{-1}$).

2.2.3.2 Homologous Gene Recombination

Homologous gene recombination using a positive selection suicide vector, pCVD422 was carried out as previously described (Donnenberg and Kasper, 1991). The suicide vector pCVD422 is also based upon the λ*pir* system (see above) and therefore ideal for gene replacement or introduction of mutations into the chromosome of λpir$^-$ strains. pCVD422 contains the *sacB* gene, which confers sucrose sensitivity and thus allow the positive selection for the loss of vector sequences after homologous recombination. This system was used in filter mating experiments as described earlier to introduce mutations in the chromosome.

2.3 Procedures for Recombinant DNA Manipulation

2.3.1 Extraction and Purification of Plasmid DNA

Small scale preparation of plasmid DNA was carried out using the alkaline lysis method. Cells pelleted from 1.5ml of an overnight culture were resuspended in 100µl ice-cold solution I (50mM glucose, 25mM Tris-HCl pH 8.0, 10mM EDTA and 5mgml^{-1} lysozyme) and left on ice for 30 mins, followed by the addition of 200µl of freshly made solution II (0.2M NaOH and 1% SDS). The content of the tube were then mixed by inverting the tube five times and placed on ice. After 5 mins on ice 150µl of ice-cold solution III (5M potassium acetate buffer pH 4.8, which consists of 3M potassium and 5M acetate) was added, again followed by gentle mixing and a precipitate was allowed to form by standing the tube on ice for 5 mins. The supernatant was recovered after centrifugation and extracted once with equal volume (about 400µl) of phenol:chloroform (1:1), vortexed for 5 secs and centrifuged for 1 min. The upper aqueous phase was collected and mixed with 1ml of ethanol at room temperature. After 5 mins the DNA precipitate was sedimented by centrifugation in a bench top minifuge for 5 mins. The ethanol was aspirated and discarded, leaving the DNA pellet which was then dried for 5 mins using a vacuum desicator. DNA pellet was resuspended in 50µl of sterile nanopure water and stored at -20^{o}C.

Large scale preparation of plasmid DNA was carried out using either the alkaline lysis method described by Birnboim and Doly (1979) followed by caesium chloride-ethidium bromide density gradient centrifugation or the Maxi prep kit (Qiagen). For the caesium chloride-ethidium bromide

density gradient method, cells from a 400ml overnight culture were harvested in two large pots by centrifugation. Each cell pellet was resuspended in 5ml of ice-cold solution I, transferred to a 30ml Oakridge tube and left to stand on ice for 30 mins. Freshly made solution II (10ml) at room temperature was added, gently mixed and left for a further 10 mins on ice. Ice-cold solution III (7.5ml) was added, again mixed gently and incubated for a further 10 mins on ice. Cell debris was removed from the plasmid preparation by centrifugation at 45°C for 20 mins at 35000g. The supernatant (18ml) was mixed with 12ml of isopropyl alcohol and left to stand at room temperature for a minimum of 15 mins. The resultant DNA precipitate was pelleted by centrifugation in 30ml Corex tubes at 3500g for 30 mins at 20°C. The DNA pellet was air dried for 15 mins and resuspended in sterile nanopure water to a final volume of 17ml. Caesium chloride (17g) was added (ie to a final concentration of $1mgml^{-1}$), allowed to dissolve and the solution was transferred to a 30ml Sorval vertical rotor centrifuge tube. Ethidium bromide was added to a final concentration of $50\mu gml^{-1}$ and the tube filled with mineral oil, balanced and crimp-sealed. Chromosomal and plasmid DNA were separated by centrifugation at 40000 rpm using a Sorval TV850 fixed-angle rotor in a Sorval OTD 60 ultracentrifuge for 20 hrs at 20°C. DNA was visualised under UV light and the lower plasmid DNA band was extracted. Ethidium bromide was extracted by equilibration with caesium chloride-saturated isopropanol. Caesium chloride was removed by exhaustive dialysis against distilled water at room temperature. The DNA solution was aliquoted and stored at -20°C.

The maxi prep was performed according to manufacturers instructions (Qiagen). Briefly, 150ml (for high copy number plasmid) or 500ml (for low copy number plasmid) of an overnight grown culture was harvested by centrifugation at 4°C for 15 mins at 6000xg. The resulting pellet was resuspended in 10ml of ice-cold buffer P1 ($100\mu gml^{-1}$ RNase A, 50mM Tris-HCl, 10mM EDTA pH 8.0). Ten millilitre (10ml) of buffer P2 (200mM NaOH, 1% SDS) was added, gently mixed and left to stand at room temperature for 5 mins. A 10ml aliquot of ice-cold buffer P3 (3M KAc pH 5.5) was added, again gently mixed by inverting the tube five times and then incubated on ice for 20 mins. Cell debris were removed by centrifugation at 4°C for 30 mins at 30000xg and the clear supernatant was promptly recovered. QIAGEN-tip 500 column was equilibrated with 10ml buffer QBT (750mM NaCl, 50mM MOPS, 15% ethanol pH 7.0, 0.15% Triton

X-100) and the supernatant was applied to the column. Possible contaminants were removed by applying a total of 60ml wash buffer QC (1.0 M NaCl, 50mM MOPS, 15% ethanol pH 7.0) and allowing the buffer to flow through the column. DNA was eluted with 15ml of buffer QF (1.25M NaCl, 50mM Tris-HCl, 1.5% ethanol pH 8.5) and precipitated with 0.7 volumes of isopropanol, previously equilibrated to room temperature. The DNA was immediately pelleted by centrifugation at 15000xg for 30 mins at 4°C, washed once with 15ml of cold 70% ethanol and then air dried for 5 mins. DNA pellet was resuspended in 200µl of nanopure water and stored at -20°C.

2.3.2 Extraction of Chromosomal DNA

The extraction of chromosomal DNA was based on the method described by Siato and Muira (1963). Bacterial cells from a 10ml overnight broth culture were resuspended in 5ml of solution I and left to stand on ice for 30 mins. SDS and EDTA were added to final concentrations of 1% and 50mM respectively. The suspension was left to stand at room temperature until the turbidity was clear (usually within 20 mins). The cell lysate was then extracted repeatedly to remove the proteins with equal volume of phenol:chloroform (1:1), followed by a single chloroform:isoamyl alcohol (24:1). After centrifugation at 4000g for 20 mins at 4°C the upper aqueous phase was collected carefully using a truncated plastic pipette to avoid mechanical shearing of the DNA. The clear aqueous phase was then mixed with 0.1 volume of 3M sodium acetate pH 5.2 and 3 volumes of cold absolute ethanol (-20°C) was slowly poured down the side of the tube. Chromosomal DNA precipitated at the interface was then collected by spooling around the end of a sterile glass pasteur pipette and resuspended in sterile nanopure water.

2.3.3 Techniques Used in Routine DNA Manipulation

Restriction endonucleases and DNA modifying enzymes were purchased from Life Technologies Ltd (Gibco BRL) or Pharmacia Biochemicals Inc and were used according to manufacturers recomendations. Restriction endonuclease cleavage of DNA was performed typically in 20µl reaction volume with one unit of enzyme per µg of DNA at 37°C. T4 DNA ligase

was used at 4°C overnight in T4 ligase buffer (50mM Tris-HCl pH 7.5, 10mM $MgCl_2$, 1mM ATP). For ligation the molarity ratio of vector to insert used depended on the DNA ends after cleavage with restriction enzyme; for sticky ends the ratio was 1:1 and for blunt ends a ratio of 1:2 was used.

Standard analysis and sizing of DNA were estimated in kilobases using the 1 kb ladder (Gibco BRL) in agarose gel electrophoresis. DNA samples were mixed with the appropriate volumes of 6x loading buffer (0.25% bromophenol blue, 0.25% xylene cyanol, 15% ficoll). DNA fragments were separated by agarose gel electrophoresis using 0.7-1.2%$^{w}/_{v}$ Seakem agarose in TAE buffer (40mM Tris-acetate pH 7.7, 1mM EDTA) with 0.5μgml^{-1} ethidium bromide and the DNA visualised using a longwave UV transilluminator. DNA in agarose gel slices was routinely purified using a Sephaglas™ bandprep kit (Pharmacia) according to the manufacturers instructions.

The concentration of DNA was routinely determined from the A_{260} of the DNA in water using a Philip UV/VIS spectrophotometer and was calculated on the assumption that an A_{260} of 1 represents a concentration of 50μgml^{-1} for a double stranded DNA and 33μgml^{-1} for a linear DNA. Alternatively DNA concentrations were estimated by comparing band intensities to those of known standards after agarose gel electrophoresis.

Dephosphorylation of plasmid vector by the removal of 5' terminal phosphate groups from cleaved vector DNA fragments was carried out to achieve high frequency recombination between vector and insert DNA. Basically, 100µg of vector DNA was cleaved to completion in a reaction volume of 50µl. A total of 45µl of the digested DNA was mixed with 5µl of 10x calf intestinal phosphatase (CIP) buffer (10x CIP buffer; 50mM Tris-HCl pH 9.0, 10mM $MgCl_2$, 1mM $ZnCl_2$), followed by 1µl of 5Uμl^{-1} CIP (New England Biological, NEB). After 30 mins incubation at 37°C a further 0.5µl of CIP was added and the reaction allowed to proceed for a further 30 mins at 37°C. The reaction mixture was then made up to 200µl and the DNA extracted twice with an equal volume of phenol:chloroform (1:1). The phosphatase DNA was ethanol precipitated and the pellet washed with 70% ethanol as previousely described (see section2.3.1). DNA was resuspended in 50µl sterile nanopure water. Phosphatase efficacy was assessed by the transformation efficiency of self-ligated phosphatase vector.

2.3.4 Polymerase Chain Reaction

Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) was performed based on the method of Saiki *et al* . (1988). PCR reactions were typically in 100µl reaction volume consisting of oligonucleotide primers (0.25µM each), dNTPs (200µM final for each), template DNA (10ng), reaction buffer (1x; 10mM Tris-HCl pH 8.8, 50mM KCl, 1.5mM $MgCl_2$, 0.1% Triton X-100) and 2.5U of Taq DNA polymerase (NEB). Reaction mixtures were overlaid with 20µl of molecular biology grade mineral oil (Sigma) prior to DNA amplification through 30 cycles using a Pelkin Elmer Cetus thermal cycler. Cycles consisted of a minute denaturation step at 95°C, a minute annealing at 55°C (temperature usually chosen to be at least 5°C lower than the Tm of the primer with the lowest melting point) and 2 mins at 72°C extension step. The amplified DNA was recovered by pipetting from under the oil overlay and 5-10µl aliquot analysed on agarose gel.

DNA was also amplified directly from bacterial cells in colony PCR. Basically the template DNA was replaced in the above reaction mixture either by using 10µl of an overnight broth culture or introducing a colony with a sterile tootpick directly into the reaction mixture given above and the DNA amplified through 30 cycles as previously described.

2.3.5 Cloning of Truncated Lengths of PCR-Amplified *kpsE* DNA Products

In order to generate site specific fusions of *blaM* to the *kpsE* gene, different lengths of the *kpsE* gene were amplified by polymerase chain reaction (PCR). The oligonucleotides for the PCR were designed to include restriction enzyme sites (shown in bold below), to facilitate cloning of the amplified DNA products and *blaM* insertion to the constructs. The oligonucleotides designated e1 to e7 include, 5'-GG**GGTACC**CCGCCCACTGAAA CTTTGAT-3' (e1), 5'-CG**GAATTCCCCGGGG**CTGGCGTCCAGACG-3' (e2), 5'-GG**GAATTC CCCGGG**CAACTGTGGCGAA-3' (e3), 5'-CG**GAATTCCAGCTG**CCAGCAGGCGATC-3' (e4), 5'-CG**GAATTCCCCGGG**ATCTTCAATAACAGC-3' (e5), 5'-GG**GAATTCCCGGG**CA CCGCCATCGGTGC-3' (e6), and 5'-CGG**AATTCCCCGGG**CTGGCTGGCTG AAGATAGC-3' (e7). The 5' oligonucleotide (e1) located immediately upstream of the *kpsE* gene had a *Kpn* I site introduced for cloning and the 3' oligonucleotides each had an *Eco* RI site for cloning and a *Sma* I (*Pvu* II in the case of e4) site to generate *blaM* fusion within the cloned DNA products. The PCR-

amplified *kpsE* fragments were cloned into a *Kpn* I- *Eco* RI linearised expression vector pYZ4 (Zhang and Broome-Smith, 1990) to generate a series of clones desinated pFE3-8 (see section 3.2.2.2).

2.4 DNA Hybridisation Procedures

2.4.1 Transfer of DNA from Agarose Gels (Southern Blotting)

DNA was transferred to filters using the capillary blotting technique described by Southern (1975). DNA sample was separated by agarose gel electrophoresis and the gel photographed along side a ruler to serve as reference point. The DNA was depurinated by soaking the gel in 0.25M HCl for 7 mins. The gel was then rinsed in distilled water and soaked in denaturing solution (0.5M NaOH, 1.5M NaCl) for 30 mins with gentle shaking. The gel was again rinsed in distilled water, followed by soaking for 30 mins in neutralising solution (0.5M Tris-HCl pH 7.5, 3M NaCl) with gentle shaking. The gel was rinsed again and then laid unto six sheets of pre-wet (20x SSC, 3M NaCl, 0.3M sodium citrate, pH 7.0) Whatman 3mm filter paper without trapping any air bubbles. A pre-soaked (3x SSC) sheet of Hybond-N nylon membrane (Amersham) was placed on the gel with a 3x SSC pre-wet Whatman paper on top, followed by four sheets of dry Whatman paper and a stack of dry paper towels. Finally, the transfer sandwich was evenly compressed by placing a glass plate and a 500g weight on top of the paper towels. The lower sheets of Whatman paper were constantly kept soaked in 20x SSC and the paper towels changed once before dismantling the apparatus after overnight of DNA transfer. The nylon membrane was air dried, wrapped in Saran wrap and the DNA cross-linked to the membrane by exposure to UV from a long wave transilluminator for 5 mins.

2.4.2 Radiolabelling of DNA for Use as Probe

Plasmid DNA was cleaved with the appropriate restriction endonucleases and the fragments separated by agarose gel electrophoresis on a 1% low melting point agarose gel (BRL). The DNA fragment(s) of interest were excised from the gel and added to sterile nanopure water (1.5ml/gram of agarose). The sample was boiled in a water bath for 7 mins before use or stored at -20°C and reboiled for 3 mins immediately before use.

Labelling reactions were performed as described by Feinberg and Vogelstein (1983). Approximately 10ng of DNA was radiolabelled using random hexanucleotide primers. Nucleotide and hexanucleotides were obtained from Parmacia and $^{32}P\alpha$-dCTP from DuPont.

2.4.3 Hybridisation and Detection of DNA Immobolised on Filters with Probe

Hybridisation and washing steps were carried out in a rotary hybridisation oven (Hybaid) using cylindrical canisters. Southern blot membrane filters were incubated in prehybridisation solution (Table 2.3) at 65°C for 2 hrs, followed by incubation overnight at 65°C in hybridisation solution (Table 2.3) containing the radiolabelled probe.

After hybridisation steps, the filters were washed twice in high stringent solutions of 0.1% SDS and 0.1x SSC at 65°C for 15 mins each and twice in 0.1% SDS and 0.5x SSC at 65°C for further 15 mins each. Filters were air dried, wrapped in Saran wrap and placed in an autoradiography cassette with the DNA side up. Kodak X-Omat AR film was exposed to the filters at -70°C. Films were developed in an Agfa-Geveart automatic film processor.

Table 2.3: Composition of Hybridisation Solutions[a]

Prehybridisation solution	3x SSC
	0.1% SDS
	5x Denhardts solution[b]
	6% PEG 600
	200$\mu g ml^{-1}$ Denatured Salmon Sperm DNA[c]

Hybridisation solution	3x SSC
	0.1% SDS
	2x Denhardts solution[b]
	6% PEG 600
	200μgml^{-1} Denatured Salmon Sperm DNA
	Radiolabelled Probe

a, solutions were stored at -20^{o}C

b, 100x Denhardts solution contains 2% Ficoll, 2% BSA and 2% Polyvinol-pyrollinidine

c, Salmon sperm DNA was denatured by boiling and forcing the solution through a narrow gauge syringe needle

2.5 DNA Sequencing

Nucleotide sequence was determined based upon the chain termination method described by Sanger *et al* . (1977), in which DNA synthesis from deoxynucleotide triphosphates is terminated by the addition of dideoxynucleotide triphosphates. Double stranded sequencing was carried out using plasmid DNA. Sequence reactions were performed using the Sequenase^{TM} Version 2.0 Kit (United States Biological, USB) with [α-^{35}S] dATP radiolabelling incorporated in the extension reaction and the ABI PRISM^{TM} Ready Reaction Dye Deoxy^{TM} Terminator Cycle Sequencing Kit (Perkin Elmer) according to manufacturers recomendations. Reactions relied on multiple annealing/denaturing cycles to amplify second strand yield.

2.5.1 DNA Sequencing Polyacrylamide Gel Electrophoresis

The radiolabelled chain termination products were resolved using Tris/Borate/EDTA (TBE) gradient gel electrophoresis (Biggins *et al* ., 1983).

Gel solution 1	7ml 5x TBE acrylamide/urea mix
	45µl 10% ammonium persulphate (APS)
	2.5µl TEMED
Gel solution 2	40ml 0.5x TBE acrylamide/urea mix
	180µl 10% ammonium persulphate (APS)
	7.5µl TEMED

Electrophoresis grade APS and TEMED were purchased from Sigma, and 30% Accugel acrylamide solution was from Flowgen. 10x TBE buffer consists of $121.1gl^{-1}$ Tris-HCl, $55gl^{-1}$ Boric acid and 40ml of 0.5M EDTA adjusted to pH 8.3. The 0.5x TBE/acrylamide urea mix consists of $430gl^{-1}$ urea, 150ml 30% acrylamide solution and $50mll^{-1}$ 10x TBE. The 5x mix is similar except that it contains $150mll^{-1}$ 10x TBE, with $50gl^{-1}$ sucrose and $50mgl^{-1}$ bromophenol blue. To prepare the gel, two glass plates (20cm by 50cm) were cleaned free of grease using teepol and water. One of the plates was siliconised by applying a smear of dimethyldichlorosaline evenly on a surface and allowing to dry. Plates were then tapped together separated by 0.4mm spacers. In a 25ml pipette, 10ml of gel solution 2 followed by 14ml of gel solution 1 were drawn and a rough gradient was formed within the pipette by drawing up some air bubbles. This mixture was run down between the glass plates avoiding formation of air bubbles and the cavity filled with the remaining of gel solution 2. The comb was positioned and plates clamped along each side. Gel was allowed to set at room temperature for 1 hr and the tape was removed from the bottom of the gel. The gel was clamped in vertical position with aluminium sheets of a similar dimension as the gel plates on either side for even heat distribution. The upper buffer reservoir was filled with 0.5x TBE and the lower with 1x TBE. The gel was pre-run for 30 mins at a constant power of 40W and the wells rinsed with running buffer prior to sample loading. Electrophoresis was performed at constant power of 40W for 3 or 6 hrs. After electrophoresis the gel plates were prised apart with the non-siliconised plate down to retain the gel, which was then soaked in gel fix (10% methanol, 10% acetic acid) for 15 mins and rinsed with distilled water. The gel was transferred to a pre-wet Whatman filter paper, covered with Saran wrap and dried under vacuum for 1 hr at $80^{o}C$. Autoradiography used the Dupont Cronex film and exposure at room temperature.

2.5.2 Automated DNA Sequencing

DNA sequencing is based on the chain termination method, where four dye-labelled dideoxy nucleotides, GATC DyeDeoxy™ terminators replaces the standard dideoxy nucleotides in the enzymatic sequencing reaction. Double stranded DNA sequencing was performed using the PRISM™ Ready Reaction DyeDeoxy™ Terminator Cycle Sequencing Kit (Perkin Elmer) according to manufacturers recommendations. The supplied terminator premix consists of 1.58μM A-DyeDeoxy, 94.74μM T-DyeDeoxy, 0.42μM G-DyeDeoxy, 47.37μM C-DyeDeoxy, 78.95μM dITP, 15.79μM dATP, 15.79μM dCTP, 15.79μM dTTP, 168.42mM Tris-HCl pH 9.0, 4.21μM $(NH_4)_2SO_4$, 42.10mM $MgCl_2$ and 0.42Uμl^{-1} AmpliTaq DNA polymerase. Typically reactions consisted of 9.5μl terminator premix, 0.6μg DNA template, 3.0pmol primer in a reaction volume of 20μl. Reaction mixture was overlaid with a drop of mineral oil. Reaction was for 25 cycles in a Perkin Elmer Model 9600 and consisted of a rapid thermal ramp and a hold at 96°C for 10 secs, annealing at 50°C for 5 secs and extension at 60°C for 4 mins. Extended products were extracted with sequencing grade chloroform once and with phenol:water:chloroform (68:18:14) solution twice. Products were precipitated with 2M sodium acetate pH 4.5 and 100% ethanol, washed once with 70% ethanol and the pellet dried. The dried product was sent to the Protein and Nucleic Acid Laboratory, University of Leicester for gel analysis.

2.6 Computer Analysis of DNA and Protein Sequences

DNA sequence was assembled using programs of the Genetics Computer Group (GCG) suite of the University of Wisconsin (Devereaux *et al* ., 1984) running on a Silicon Graphic Crimson mainframe (Daresbury Seqnet Facility, UK) and (Irix, Leicester University) under a UNIX platform. The program MAP was used to identify ORFs and restriction enzyme sites. TRANSLATE was used in creating protein sequence from the DNA sequence. DNA and protein homologies were identified from database searches using either FASTA (Lipman and Pearson, 1985) or the BLAST series (Altschul *et al* ., 1990). Databases used included the Genbank/European Molecular Biology Laboratory (Gen_EMBL) and the Swissprot/Protein Information Resource (OWL).

The hydropathy profile of Kyte and Doolittle (1982) was used for the analysis of predicted amino acid sequences on the PEPPLOT or the DNA strider software. Attempts at structure prediction for proteins were performed using the PREDICTPROTEIN version 1.0 PHD neural network facility at EMBL Heidelberg (Sander and Schneider, 1991). Multiple alignments were obtained using either CLUSTER-W or ALIEN using a PAM 250 matrix (Higgins *et al* ., 1994).

2.7 Procedures for Protein Analysis

2.7.1 Expression of Cloned Genes in *E. coli*

Protein expression from genes cloned into the pTTQ18* and pGEM-3Zf$^+$ vectors were performed using the *tac* and the T7 promoters respectively. For total cell lysate, cells in 10ml broth were grown to an OD_{600} of 0.5 and induced with 1mM IPTG final concentration. Cells were allowed to grow to an OD_{600} of 1.0 and were harvested from 1.5ml culture by centrifugation. Cells were then resuspended in nanopure water and the optical densities of cell suspension were adjusted to equivalence by diluting the higher density cell suspensions. To 200µl of cell suspension, 20µl of 10% SDS was added, boiled for 3 mins and 5-15µl of this lysate was separated by SDS-PAGE (see section 2.7.2). Gels were stained in 0.2% Coomassie blue (Sigma) solubilised in the destain solution (10% acetic acid, 40% methanol) for 1 hr and destained to achieve the desired contrast.

2.7.2 *In vivo* Radiolabelling and Detection of Protein

Proteins were expressed in pGEM-3Zf$^+$ using the T7 expression system based on the method of Tabor and Richardson (1985). The gene of interest was cloned downstream from the T7 promoter and the pGEM-3Zf$^+$ derivative transformed into *E. coli* JM109DE3. This strain contains the structural gene for bacteriophage T7 RNA polymerase on the chromosome. The T7 RNA polymerase is transcribed from the *lac* promoter on induction with IPTG. *E. coli* JM109DE3 harbours an F' factor containing *lacI*^{q} to repress the *lac* promoter under non-induced conditions.

To express plasmid encoded genes, a single colony from an agar plate of Davis medium ($7gl^{-1}$ K_2HPO_4, $2gl^{-1}$ KH_2PO_4, $0.5gl^{-1}$ Na citrate, $0.1gl^{-1}$ $MgSO_4$, $1gl^{-1}$ $(NH_4)_2SO_4$) supplemented with glucose (0.4%) and thiamine ($1\mu gl^{-1}$) was used to inoculate 10ml of L-broth and cells grown at 37°C with aeration overnight. The cell culture was diluted 1:10 in 10ml of fresh L-broth and grown further at 37°C with aeration to an OD_{600} of 0.6. Cells were harvested from 1ml of this culture by centrifugation and washed twice in unsupplemented Davis medium. The final pellet was resuspended in 1ml of Davis medium supplemeted with 0.4% glucose and $1\mu gl^{-1}$ thiamine-HCl. This cell suspension was then incubated in a 37°C water bath for 90 mins. T7 RNA polymerase was induced by the addition of 0.5mM IPTG final concentration to the cell suspension followed by incubation at 37°C for 20 mins. After induction, *E. coli* RNA polymerase was inhibited by the addition of 40µl of rifampicin ($10mgml^{-1}$ in methanol) and incubation at 37°C for 30 mins. Products of the encoded genes transcribed from the T7 promoter were then labelled by the addition of 10µCi [^{35}S] methionine (Amersham), followed by incubation at 37°C for 1 hr. The radiolabelled cells were harvested by centrifugation. Cells were then lysed by resuspendig pellet in 30µl of lysis buffer (60mM Tris-HCl pH 6.8, 1% SDS, 1% 2-mercaptoethanol, 10% glycerol, 0.01% bromophenol blue) and by bioling at 100°C for 5 mins. A 5µl aliquot of cell lysate was separated by SDS-PAGE.

SDS-PAGE was performed as described by Laemmli (1970). Gels were run using the mini PROTEAN™ II system (Biorad) according to the maufacturers instructions. The resolving gel (4.65ml of 1.5M Tris-HCl pH 8.8/0.2% SDS, 4.95ml of 30% Protogel acrylamide, 348µl of 1% APS, 40µl of TEMED) was poured first, overlaid with butan-1-ol and allowed to set. On setting the butanol was removed and the top of the gel was washed with distilled water. The resolving gel was then overlaid with stacking gel (3ml of 0.5M Tris-HCl pH 6.8/0.2% SDS, 1.04 ml of 30% Protogel acrylamide, 2.12ml distilled water, 150µl of 1% APS, 20µl of TEMED) and the comb immediately put in place. Gel was allowed to set and the comb removed before samples were loaded. Electrophoresis was performed in a Tris/Glycine/SDS buffer (25mM Tris base, 193mM Glycine, 0.1% SDS) at 150V for 1-2 hrs until the bromophenol blue dye front has migrated to the bottom of the gel. Broad range prestained SDS-PAGE markers (Biorad) were used as standards. After electrophoresis the gel was soaked in a fixing solution (10% acetic acid and 25% isopropanol) for 30 mins and treated

with Amplify (Amersham) according to the manufacturers recommendations. Gels were dried under vacuum at 80°C and autoradiographed at room temperature using DuPont Cronex film.

2.7.3 Detection of Protein Antigen by Western Blotting

For Western blotting, proteins resolved by SDS-PAGE were transferred to PVDF membrane (Millipore Corporation) using the electroblotting technique of Towbin *et al* . (1979). Electrotransfer was performed in 25mM Tris base, 193mM glycine, 20% methanol (transfer buffer) at 120V for 1 hr. Protein detection was performed using the ECL™ western blotting protocol (Amersham Life Science). Essentially immediately after protein transfer, non-specific binding sites on membranes were blocked for overnight at 4°C in blocking solution (5% skimmed milk in phosphate buffer saline, PBS; 137mM NaCl, 1.5mM KH_2PO_4, 8mM Na_2HPO_4, 6.7mM KCl, containing 0.1% Tween 20™). Membranes were then washed three times for 15 mins each in PBS-Tween 20™ wash buffer at room temperature. The membranes were incubated with the appropriate primary antibody dilutions for 1 hr at room temperature with constant agitation on a rocking platform (Hybaid). The membranes were washed as previously described and incubated with the HRP-conjugated second antibody for 1 hr at room temperature. This was followed by washing the membranes five times, which was then wrapped in Saran wrap. Detection was through hydrogen peroxide, H_2O_2/HRP catalysed oxidation of luminol in alkaline conditions, achieved by incubating membranes in pre-mixed equal volumes of the detection solutions 1 and 2. Film exposure was for 5-30 secs. Antibodies were routinely diluted in blocking solution. The KpsE antibody was used at 1:1000 dilutions and has been described (Rosenow *et al* ., 1995). Antibody to β-lactamase was obtained from 5'-3' Inc, and was used at a dilution of 1:10000. The secondary antibody was anti rabbit IgG-horseradish peroxidase (HRP) conjugate (5'-3' Inc) and was used at 1:2500 dilutions.

Membranes were routinely stripped and reprobed several times with antibodies. Stripping was achieved by incubating membranes in stripping buffer (10mM 2-mercaptoethanol, 2% SDS, 62.5mM Tris-HCL pH 6.7) for 30 mins at 65°C.

2.8 Subcellular Fractionation and Proteolysis with Proteinase K

Subcellular fractionation was carried out based on the method described by Kampfenkel and Braun (1993). A 10ml culture of the appropriate strain was grown at 37°C with aeration to an OD_{600} of 0.8 and cells were induced with 1mM IPTG final concentration. The cells were harvested at an OD_{600} of 1.2 by centrifugation at 4000g for 5 mins at 4°C, followed by resuspension in 1ml ice-cold solution of 0.2M Tris-HCl, 0.5M sucrose, 0.5mM EDTA pH 8.0 and 0.5mgml^{-1} lysozyme, and incubation on ice for 20-30 mins. Spheroplast formation and stability were observed by phase contrast microscopy. The spheroplasts were collected by centrifugation at 3000g for 5 mins at 4°C and the supernatant fraction containing the periplasm was precipitated with 0.5ml of 30% trichloroacetic acid. The pelleted speroplasts were resuspended in 1ml of ice-cold PBS and 20% sucrose, and 0.5ml of this suspension was left on ice as control for untreated sample. To the remaining 0.5ml of spheroplast suspension, 10µl of 50mgml^{-1} of proteinase K was added and incubated at 37°C for 15 mins. Proteolysis of the spheroplasts was stopped by the addition of 2mM final concentration of phenylmethylsulfonyl fluoride (PMSF) in isopropyl alcohol. Both proteinase K treated and untreated spheroplast were collected by centrifugation and the resulting pellet resuspended in 150µl of PBS pH 7.6. To this 150µl suspension, 15µl of 10x SDS-PAGE loading buffer was added and then boiled for 5 mins. The boiled samples (10-15µl) were analysed by SDS-PAGE and the proteins were probed with specific antibodies as described in Western blot procedure.

2.9 Assay for Lyase Enzyme Activity

Enzymatic activity was determined by incubating cell lysate of strain harbouring the lyase clone with the extracted polysaccharide of *E. coli* K5. Lyophilised K5 polysaccharide was a generous gift from Professor K Jann Laboratory in Freiburg, Germany. The K5 polysaccharide was essentially extracted by harvesting cells from 400ml overnight culture at 10000xg for 10 mins at 4°C. The resulting pellet was washed once with 50ml PBS. The pellet was then incubated in 50mM Tris-HCl, 5mM EDTA pH 7.3 for 30 mins at 37°C, followed by centrifugation, with this process repeated three times. The resulting polysaccharide extract in the supernatant from the three centrifugation steps was precipitated by the addition to the

supernatant of 10% cetyl-3-ethyl ammonium bromide sodium salt to saturation and incubation at room temperature overnight. The precipitate was recovered by centrifugation at 10000xg for 20 mins at 20°C which was then dissolved in 1M NaCl and 80% ethanol solution, followed by centrifugation. The pellet was resuspended in 1-5ml of nanopure water and dialysed against water at 4°C for 2 days. The suspension was freeze dried, followed by resuspension in water and then ultracentrifugation with fix angle rotor at 100000xg for 4 hrs at 4°C. The supernatant containing the polysaccharide was collected and freeze dried.

The enzyme lysate was obtained from a 10ml culture of strain habouring the appropriate clone. Cells were grown to OD_{600} of 0.6, followed by induction for 1 hr with 1mM IPTG final concentration. Cells were collected by centrifugation at 4000g for 5 mins at 4°C, washed once and resuspended in ice-cold sonication buffer (100mM Tris-HCl pH 7.5). The suspension was sonicated to clarity and the supernatant (lysate) obtained after centrifugation.

The enzyme assay involved incubating 20µl of K5 polysaccharide substrate ($5 mg ml^{-1}$ in Tris buffer pH 7.5) with 5-20µl of lysate for 5 mins (pFE50 clone) or 6 hrs (B4 clone) at 37°C. At the end of reaction, sample buffer (10x; 2M sucrose in 10x TBE and bromophenol blue) was added to 1x final concentration. Samples were then resolved by PAGE in 1x TBE at 350-400V for 2-3 hrs. The gel was fixed for 30 mins in acetic acid, water and ethanol (10:110:80) solution, stained for 3 hrs with Alcian Blue (0.5% in 2% acetic acid) (Sigma) and destained with 2% acetic acid in water. Samples were resolved in 25% acrylamide gel, which consists (for 40ml) of 4ml 10x TBE, 15ml water, 20ml 50% acrylamide stock (49% or $495.9 gl^{-1}$ acrylamide and 1% or $4.1 gl^{-1}$ bisacrylamide), 150µl 10% APS and 15µl TEMED.

Chapter 3

Topology of KpsE, a Protein Involved in the Export of Polysaccharide in *Escherichia coli* K5

3.1 Introduction

Capsular polysaccharides play a critical role in the interaction of a micro-organism and its environment. Capsules have been recognised as important virulence determinants conferring on bacteria the ability to evade the human host defence. The capsular polysaccharide of *E. coli* have been divided into three groups on the basis of chemical structure, size, mode of expression and genetic determinants (Jann and Jann, 1990; Pearce and Roberts, 1995). Group II capsule gene clusters studied so far show a common organisation consisting of three functional regions, 1, 2 and 3. Region 2 encodes proteins necessary for the biosynthesis and polymerisation of type specific polysaccharide. The flanking regions 1 and 3 are homologous among different group II capsules and are thought to encode products involved in the export of polysaccharide across the bacterial membrane and its surface expression. The *E. coli* K5 KpsE protein encoded in region 1 has been shown to localise in the inner membrane and mutants lacking the encoded product were unable to export polysaccharide to the cell surface (Bronner *et al* ., 1993a; Rosenow *et al* ., 1995a). The predicted amino acid sequence of the KpsE protein of *E. coli* K5 and K1 is homologous to those of the CtrB and BexC proteins encoded by the capsule gene clusters of *N. meningitidis* and *H. influenzae* respectively. A distinct subfamily (ABC-2) of the ABC-transporters involved in polysaccharide export has been proposed on the basis of sequence comparison studies (Reizer *et al* ., 1992). Analysis of the amino acid sequences of DrrAB and NodIJ proteins involved in drug resistance transport in *Streptomyces peucetius* and nodulation in *Rhizobium leguminosarum* respectively showed that they are homologous to three sets of proteins (KpsMT of *E. coli* , BexABC of *H. influenzae* and CtrDCB of *N. meningitidis*) comprising capsular polysaccharide export systems in gram-negative bacteria (Reizer *et al* ., 1992). The Bex and Ctr systems of this ABC-2 subfamily are postulated to have two integral membrane components, the BexC protein is thought to interact with BexAB transporters and the CtrB with CtrCD transporters in the inner membrane. On the basis of their likely function and location

within the cytoplasmic membrane, both the CtrB and BexC proteins have been suggested to form the third components of the ABC-2 transporters involved in the export of polysaccharide across the cytoplasmic membrane (Reizer *et al* ., 1992). By analogy, the KpsE protein which is homologous to the BexC and CtrB proteins, might interact with the KpsMT ABC-transport components in the export of polysaccharide in *E. coli* . In addition, the ABC exporters have been identified in many bacteria and they constitute a family of proteins involved in the export of several unrelated polypeptides in these bacteria. In the best studied cases, they have been postulated to comprise three components (Fath and Kolter, 1993; Dinh *et al* ., 1994; Binet and Wandersman, 1996). These include the inner membrane ATP-binding cassette (ABC) protein(s), in which the membrane spanning and the ATP-binding segments may be present on the same polypeptide or as distinct polypeptides, and a second inner membrane protein with a large periplasmic domain and a C-terminus that may interact with the outer membrane. Because of their membrane topology these proteins are classified into the membrane fusion protein (MFP) family (Dinh *et al* ., 1994). The third component is an outer membrane protein (Wandersman, 1992; Binet and Wandersman, 1996). The inner membrane location of the BexC, CtrB and KpsE proteins suggests that they represent the MFP protein in the ABC-mediated export of polysaccharide. To understand the possible role played in the export of polysaccharide by the KpsE, it is required to define the topology within the cytoplasmic membrane.

The ability to predict protein topology from the primary sequence and the use of gene fusions to study membrane protein topology are both well established techniques (von Heijne, 1986, 1992; von Heijne and Gavel, 1988; Boyd and Beckwith, 1990; Broome-Smith *et al* ., 1990; Gafvelin and von Heijne, 1994; Prinz and Beckwith, 1994). Topological models for a membrane protein can be generated from its predicted amino acid sequence, using the hydropathy profile (Kyte and Doolittle, 1982) and the 'positive inside rule' (von Heijne, 1992). Such models can be confirmed using gene fusion approach. Tn*phoA* have been used to generate alkaline phosphatase (AP) fusions in determining the topology of membrane proteins (Manoil and Beckwith, 1985, 1986; Boyd *et al* ., 1993; Prinz and Beckwith, 1994). AP is enzymatically active when localised to the periplasm but is inactive in the cytoplasm. Thus, when the mature AP moiety is fused to a membrane protein, its location is determined by the topogenic information encoded in that protein and can be analysed by measuring or detecting the AP enzymatic activity. This system relies on random *phoA*

gene fusions and it is therefore generally inefficient in that even distribution of *phoA* fusions is not a certainty and many fusions will have to be isolated to obtain a complete topological analysis. A similar gene fusion approach for studying protein topology has been developed using β-lactamase (*blaM*) gene (Broome-Smith and Spratt, 1986; Broome-Smith *et al* ., 1990). BlaM confers resistance to β-lactam drugs such as ampicillin when exported to the periplasm. When BlaM, which lacks its N-terminal signal sequence is fused to various lengths of a membrane protein, its localisation can be analysed from the levels of ampicillin resistance conferred, thus acting as topological reporter protein. β-lactamase is only active in the periplasm and from the level of ampicillin resistance conferred both periplasmic and cytoplasmic fusions can be selected and has been successfully used to analyse the topology of a number of membrane proteins (Wang *et al* ., 1991; Kampfenkel and Braun, 1993; Reeves *et al* ., 1994; Gunn *et al* ., 1995). The membrane topology of the KpsE protein was investigated using both Tn*phoA* mutagenesis and β-lactamase fusions. The topology was confirmed by accessibility of fusion proteins to proteinase K.

Previous mutational analysis of the KpsE protein involved the use of deletion and insertion mutants, where the entire gene had been deleted or an oligonucleotide inserted within the gene. These mutations have resulted in a polarity effect on the expression of downstream region 1 genes and are therefore unsuitable for structure-function studies. In order to avoid this polarity effect, it is necessary to construct a null *kpsE* mutant. The construction of a strain (MS101) with a single copy of the K5 capsule gene cluster in its normal location in the chromosome of a laboratory strain of *E. coli* has been described (Stevens *et al* ., 1994) and was exploited in making a null *kpsE* mutant.

3.2 Results

3.2.1 Prediction of Membrane Topology of the KpsE Protein

The hydropathy profile of the KpsE protein was determined by the Kyte and Doolittle algorithm (Kyte and Doolittle, 1982) to expose potential α-helices forming regions. Based on the hydropathy plot (Figure 3.1) of the predicted amino acid sequence and the use of von Heijne's 'positive inside rule', a working model (Figure 3.2) consisting of two transmembrane spanning regions for the membrane topology of KpsE was proposed. The

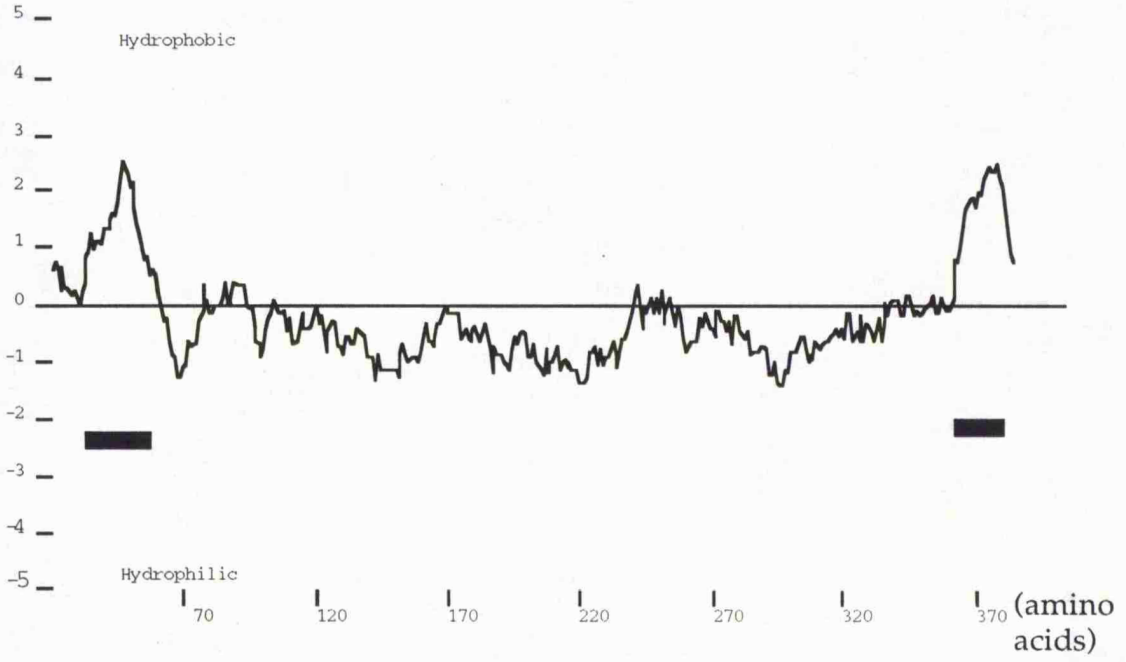
membrane spanning regions consisted of residues 29-49 and 351-371. These chosen membrane spanning regions were strengthened by the prediction of helical transmembrane segments (PHDhtm) for the KpsE protein using a profile fed neural network system from Heidelberg (Rost *et al* ., 1994).

3.2.2 Analysis of Membrane Topology of the KpsE Protein Using Gene Fusion

3.2.2.1 Tn*phoA* mutagenesis

To confirm the proposed model of the membrane topology, Tn*phoA* mutagenesis was used to generate *phoA* fusions to the KpsE protein. Random mutagenesis were generated in filter mating experiments (see section 2.2.3) using *E. coli* LE392 carrying the plasmid pCR6 as recipient and *E. coli* SM10λpirpRT733 as donor strains. Conjugants resulting from the mating were selected on M9 salt minimal medium containing the appropriate antibiotics. Plasmid DNA extracted from kanamycin resistant transconjugants was used to transform *E. coli* CC118 and PhoA$^+$ mutants were identified as blue colonies on plates containing the chromogenic substrate, 5-bromo-4-chloro-3-indonyl phosphate (XP, 40μgml^{-1}). Tn*phoA* insertions were mapped within the *kpsE* gene in plasmid pCR6 using restriction endonucleases. A total of 128 plasmid insertion mutants representing 2 blues and 126 whites were isolated. Of these 128 insertion mutants, 15 mapped within the *kpsE* gene and the remaining 113 were within the vector sequence. Thirteen out of the 15 insertions within the *kpsE* were in the wrong orientation to the transcribed gene. The two blue insertion mutants represented PhoA$^+$ insertions at amino acid positions 54 and 56 of the KpsE protein. The precise insertion site within the *kpsE* gene was determined by nucleotide sequence with oligonucleotide primers to *phoA* . Two oligonucleotide primers, 5′-CTGAGCAGCCCGGTT-3′ and 5′-GTTAGGAGGTCACATG-3′, that bind respectively within 63 bp from the start and 78 bp to the end of Tn*phoA* sequence were used to sequence from the *phoA* into the *kpsE* gene.

The two *phoA* fusions within the *kpsE* gene represented a low isolation frequency and more fusions were needed to cover the remaining parts of the KpsE protein to determine its membrane topology.




```
  1  MLIKVKSAVS WMRARLSAIS LADIQKHLAK IIILAPMAVL LIYLAIFSQP
 51  RYMSESKVAI KRSDDLNSGS LNFGLLLGAS NPSSAEDALY LKEYINSPDM
101  LAALDKQLNF REAFSHSGLD FLNHLSKDET AEGFLKYYKD RINVSYDDKT
151  GLLNIQTQGF SPEFALKFNQ TVLKESERFI NEMSHRIARD QLAFAETEME
201  KARQRLDASK AELLSYQDNN NVLDPQAQAQ AASTLVNTLM GQKIQMEADL
251  RNLLTYLRED APQVVSARNA IQSLQAQIDE EKSKITAPQG DKLNRMAVDF
301  EEIKSKVEFN TELYKLTLTS IEKTRVEAAR KLKVLSVISS PQLPQESSFP
351  NIPYLIACWL LVCCLLFGTL KLLLAVIEDH RD
```

Figure 3.1. Hydropathicity plot of the KpsE protein: by the method of Kyte & Doolittle (1982) with a window of 20. Boxes denote positions of the two α-helices. The amino acid sequence of KpsE is shown below the hydropathy plot and positions of the two α-helices are underlined. Residue numbers are shown on the left.

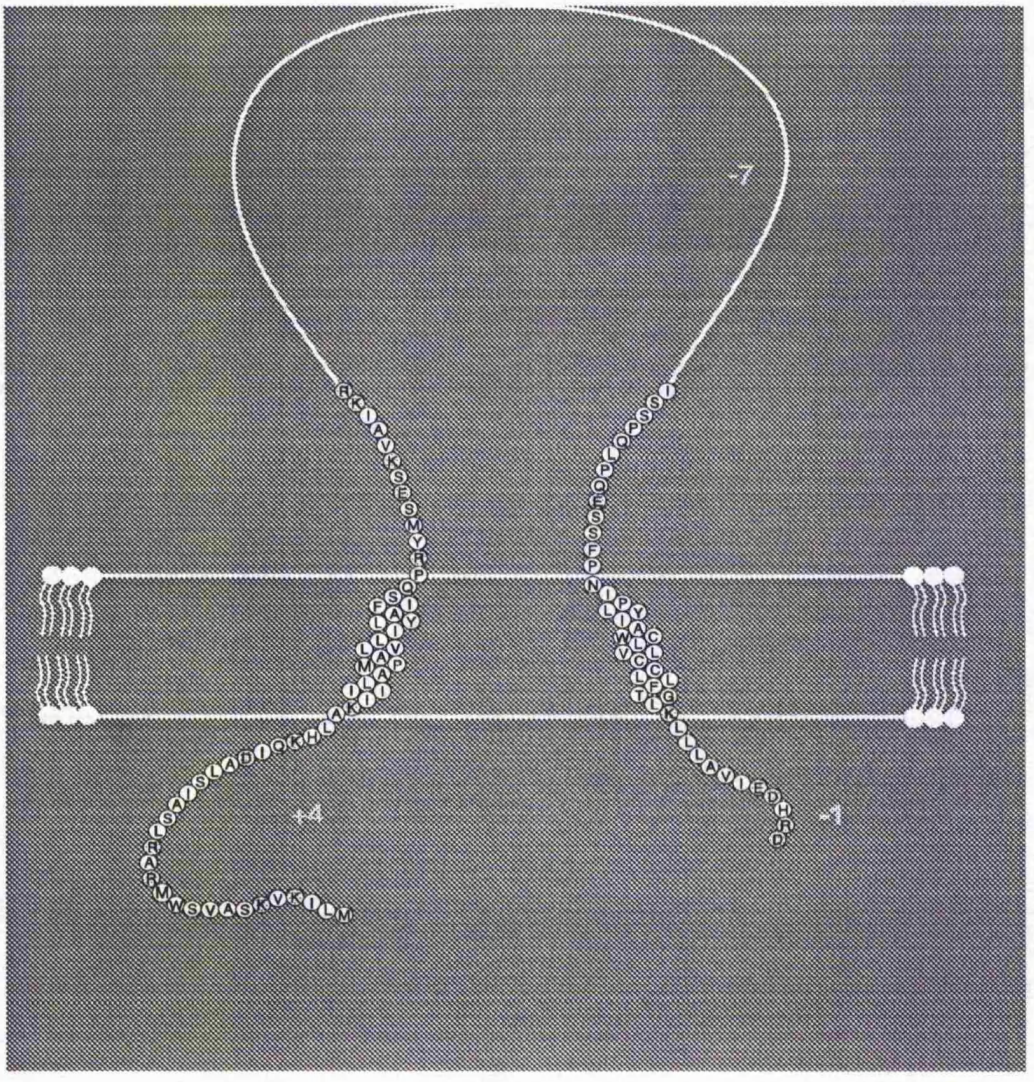


Figure 3.2. Model of the membrane organisation of the KpsE protein. The net positive and negative charges are indicated. Single letter amino acids are shown within circles.

3.2.2.2 Generation of β-lactamase fusion

The isolated PhoA fusions were close together at amino acid positions 54 and 56 of the KpsE protein and because of the random insertion associated with the use of the Tn*phoA* system, site-specific fusions were needed in other domains of the protein to obtain better topological information. The β-lactamase gene fusion system described by Broome-Smith and Spratt (1986) was used to generate site-specific fusions to other parts of the KpsE protein.

Site specific inframe fusions of *blaM* to the *kpsE* gene were made using a unique *Eco*RV site in *kpsE* and to truncated lengths of PCR-amplified *kpsE* DNA products. In order to utilise the *Eco*RV site in *kpsE* for a translational inframe fusion to BlaM, a 2.1 kb *Sma* I-*Hinc* II *kpsE* fragment from plasmid pH18 was ligated into an *Eco*RV linearised expression vector pYZ4 (Zhang and Broome-Smith, 1990) to generate plasmid pFE2. To cover other regions , truncated lengths of the *kpsE* gene were amplified by polymerase chain reaction (PCR). Oligonucleotides for the PCR were made with restriction enzyme sites within, to facilitate cloning of the amplified DNA products and *blaM* insertion to the constructs. The 5′ oligonucleotide (5′-GGGGTACCCGCCCACTGAAACTTTGAT-3′) had a *Kpn* I site (shown in bold) introduced for cloning and the 3′ oligonucleotides each had an *Eco*RI site for cloning and a *Sma* I site to generate *blaM* fusion within the cloned DNA product (Figure 3.3) (see section 2.3.5). The PCR amplified *kpsE* fragments were cloned in the *Kpn* I-*Eco*RI linearised expression vector pYZ4 (Figure 3.3) to generate a series of constructs designated pFE3-8 (Figure 3.4). A 0.9 kb *Sma* I DNA fragment encoding the matured BlaM protein in plasmid pLH21 was ligated into the *Eco*RV site in pFE2 and the *Sma* I sites in pFE3-8 to generate BlaM fusions at amino acid positions 24, 41, 51, 211, 345, 361 and 381 yielding respectively constructs pFE2::24, pFE7::41, pFE8::51, pFE3::211, pFE4::345,. pFE5::361 and pFE6::381 (Figure 3.4). The KpsE-BlaM fusion junctions were confirmed by nucleotide sequence using the primer 5′-CACTCGTGCACCCAACTG-3′, which is complementary to codons 15-19 of *blaM* .

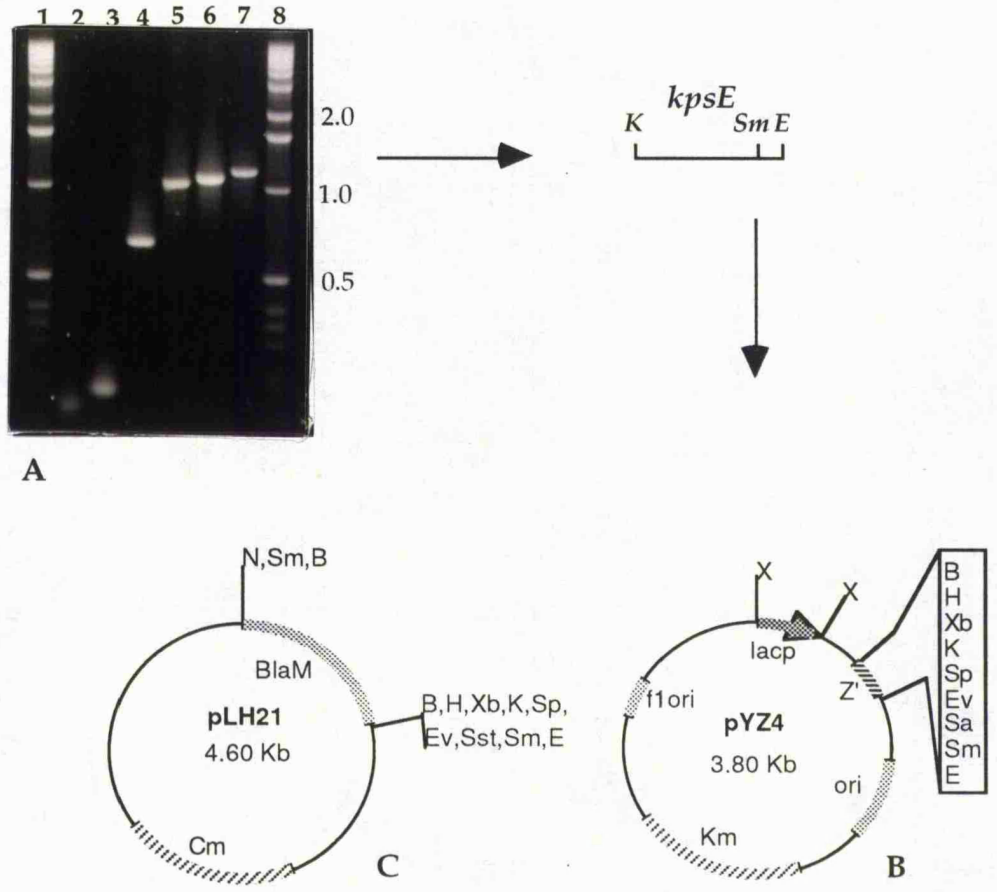


Figure 3.3. Cloning of different lengths of PCR-amplified *kpsE* DNA products. PCR products each with unique restriction enzyme sites are shown (A). DNA fragments were cloned in the expression vector pYZ4 (B), before ligating the *blaM* fragment from plasmid pLH21 (C) in the cloned gene. Abbreviations: B= *BamH* I, E= *Eco*RI, Ev= *Eco*RV, H= *Hind* III, K= *Kpn* I, Nc= *Nco* I, Sa= *Sal* I, Sm= *Sma* I, Sp= *Sph* I, Sst= *Sst* I, Xb= *Xba* I. Sizes are in kilobase.

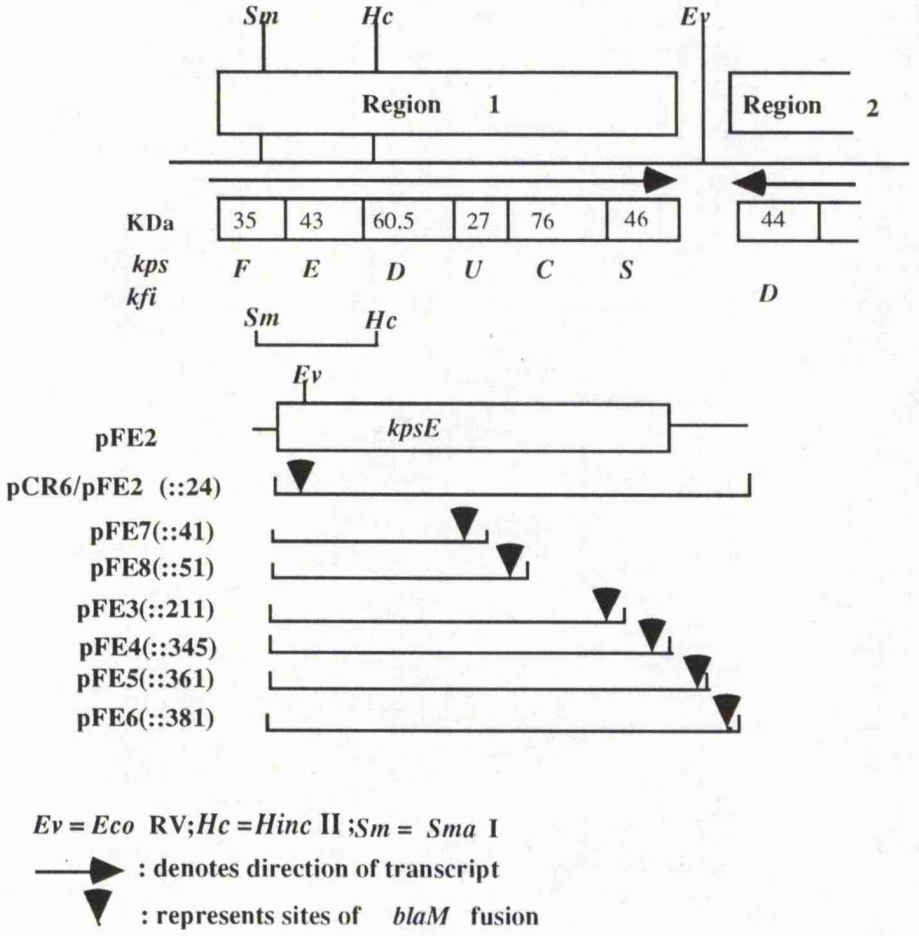


Figure 3.4. Construction of the pFE::*blaM* gene fusion series. The precise site of *blaM* insertions are indicated in parenthesis.

3.2.2.2.1 Ampicillin Resistance of *E. coli* JM101 Expressing KpsE-BlaM Hybrid Proteins

Strains expressing KpsE-BlaM fusion proteins were selected by patching colonies unto L-agar plates that contained 25μgml^{-1} kanamycin, 1mM IPTG and 30μgml^{-1} ampicillin. This initial screening ensures that *E. coli* colonies carrying BlaM fusions to both cytoplasmic and periplasmic domains of the KpsE protein were selected, when inoculated at high cell density (cell patches) (Broome-Smith and Spratt, 1986). Cell patches containing plasmids with putative inframe BlaM fusions to KpsE (Ampicillin resistant) were then tested for their ability to form single colonies on L-agar containing various concentrations of ampicillin when grown at low cell density (see section 2.1.3). The minimum inhibitory concentration, MIC (see section 2.1.3) determined for the KpsE-BlaM fusions are listed table 3.1, and these Amp^r levels are superimposed on the topological model (Figure 3.5). Fusions were tested in the same experiment.

Table 3.1. The Amp^r Values of *E. coli* JM101 Expressing KpsE-BlaM Fusion Proteins

KpsE-BlaM fusion	Amp^r (MIC values) in μgml^{-1}
pFE2::BlaM,24	<5
pFE7::BlaM,41	50
pFE8::BlaM,51	100
pFE3::BlaM,211	150
pFE4::BlaM,345	100
pFE5::BlaM,361	10
pFE6::BlaM,381	15

Amp^r, ampicillin resistance; MIC, minimum inhibitory concentration.

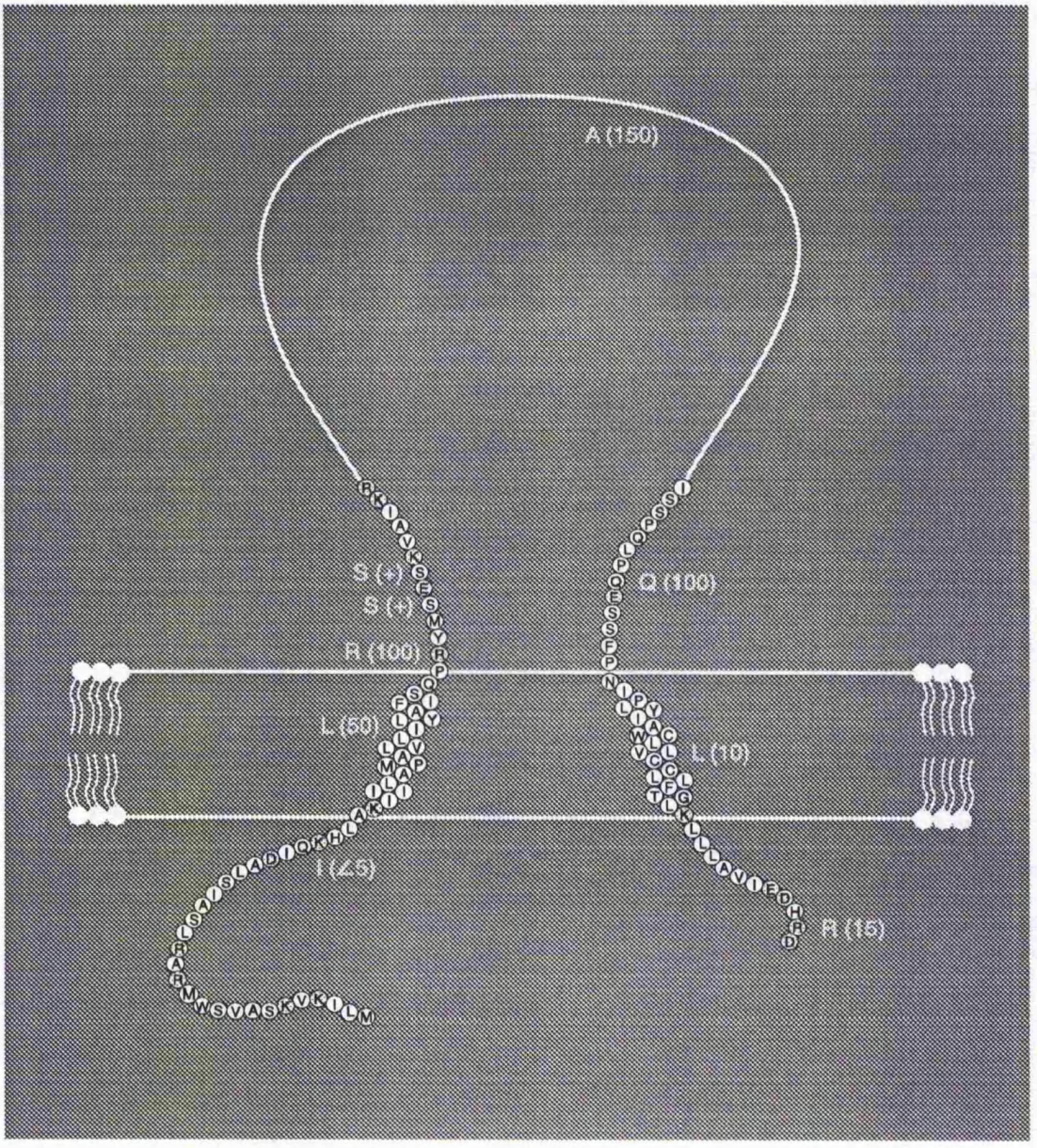


Figure 3.5. The MIC values of KpsE-BlaM fusion proteins, superimposed on the working model. MIC values are shown in parenthesis, next to the amino acid residues to which BlaM was fused. The two PhoA$^+$ insertions are represented with a plus (+) sign.

3.2.2.2.2 Visualisation of KpsE-BlaM Fusion Proteins by Western Blot Analysis

To ensure that the MIC values (Figure 3.5) were not affected by the quantity and/or the stability of fusion proteins expressed, total protein lysate of all KpsE-BlaM fusions were visualised in Western blot analysis using anti-β-lactamase antibody (Figure 3.6A). The results revealed similar levels of expression by the KpsE-BlaM fusions despite the varying levels of Amp^r (<5 to 150μgml^{-1}), indicating a lack of correlation between the MIC values and the amount of fusion protein expressed. This suggests that the high MIC values determined for fusions to amino acid positions 51, 211 and 345 are reflections of BlaM location in the periplasm.

The membrane used in the Western blot analysis using anti-BlaM antibody was stripped (see section 2.7.3) and then reprobed with anti-KpsE antibody. The results showed lack of hybridisation to KpsE-BlaM fusions, pFE7::41, pFE8::51 and pFE3::211, while fusions pFE2::24, pFE4::345, pFE5::361 and pFE6::381 were reactive to the KpsE antibody (Figure 3.6B).The pCR6 construct (Rosenow *et al* ., 1995a) was used as a positive control for the KpsE antibody reaction, and it is essentially a 2.1 kb *Sma* I-*Hinc* II fragment containing the entire *kpsE* gene placed under the bacteriophage λ promoter in plasmid pCE30 (Elvin *et al* ., 1990). The BlaM fusion at amino acid position 24 (pFE2::24) is between the first 24 N-terminal amino acids and the remaining residues of the KpsE protein and the reactivity with the KpsE antibody is indicative of a second translational start downstream from the fusion point (see figure 3.4). The BlaM fusions to residues 41, 51 and 211 lack respectively the last 341, 331 and 171 amino acid residues of the KpsE protein and their inability to react with the KpsE antibody shows that the epitope recognised by the KpsE antisera lie within the last 170 (212-382) amino acid residues of the KpsE protein.

3.2.2.2.3 Subcellular Fractionation and Proteolysis with Proteinase K

The cytoplasmic membrane (spheroplast) and the periplasm of strain carrying all KpsE-BlaM fusions were separated and Western blot analysis of the cell fractions revealed that the KpsE-BlaM fusion proteins were entirely membrane associated (Figure 3.7). The location of the β-lactamase in each hybrid protein was verified by proteinase K accessibility to spheroplasts made from KpsE-BlaM hybrid proteins. The results showed that the fusion

at position 24 was protected indicative of a cytoplasmic location while the remaining fusions were cleaved, indicating that these fusions must be exposed to proteinase K at the periplasmic face of the cytoplasmic membrane (Figure 3.8).

Whilst from the topological model, the BlaM fusion at position 381 was expected to be cytoplasmic, it was found accessible to proteinase K. One reason for this unexpected result could be due to disruption of the inner membrane integrity during spheroplast preparation thereby allowing proteinase K to enter the cytoplasm. To ascertain if this were the case, plasmid pACYC184 which encodes a cytoplasmic chloramphenicol acetyl transferase (CAT) protein was transformed into a strain carrying the KpsE-BlaM fusion at position 381. Western blot analysis of proteinase K treated and untreated spheroplast obtained from this strain using antibody to CAT (Figure 3.9) showed that the CAT protein was exclusively protected, indicative of an intact spheroplast. This also means that the C-terminus of the KpsE protein is not cytoplasmic but rather within the inner membrane, a result that is in agreement with that of the Amp^r level conferred by the strain carrying BlaM at position 381.

3.2.3 Analysis of the KpsE and Other Proteins Involved in Bacterial ABC Transport

Comparing sequences of the KpsE and some members of the recently described membrane fusion protein (MFP) family (Dinh *et al* ., 1994) revealed some similarities. The majority of the MFP family are fairly uniform in size, typically in the range of 367-478 residues, with the exception of a larger (520 residues) CzcB protein as reported by Dinh *et al* . (1994). The KpsE protein with 382 residues is well within this size range. Most striking is the similarity of predicted topology of these proteins to that determined for KpsE, namely a short hydrophilic N-terminal region, followed by a segment of 20 hydrophobic membrane spanning residues and a large periplasmic domain. Comparisons using the sequence alignment program of Lipman and Pearson (1985) between the predicted amino acid sequences of the KpsE protein and four members of the MFPs, CvaA involved in colicin V export in *E. coli* , HasE required for heme acquisition in *Serratia marcescens* , HlyD involved in haemolysin export in *E. coli* , and PrtE needed for protease export in *Erwinia chrysanthemi* revealed respectively 17.5%, 19.2%, 18.9% and 20.7% identities. Taking conservative

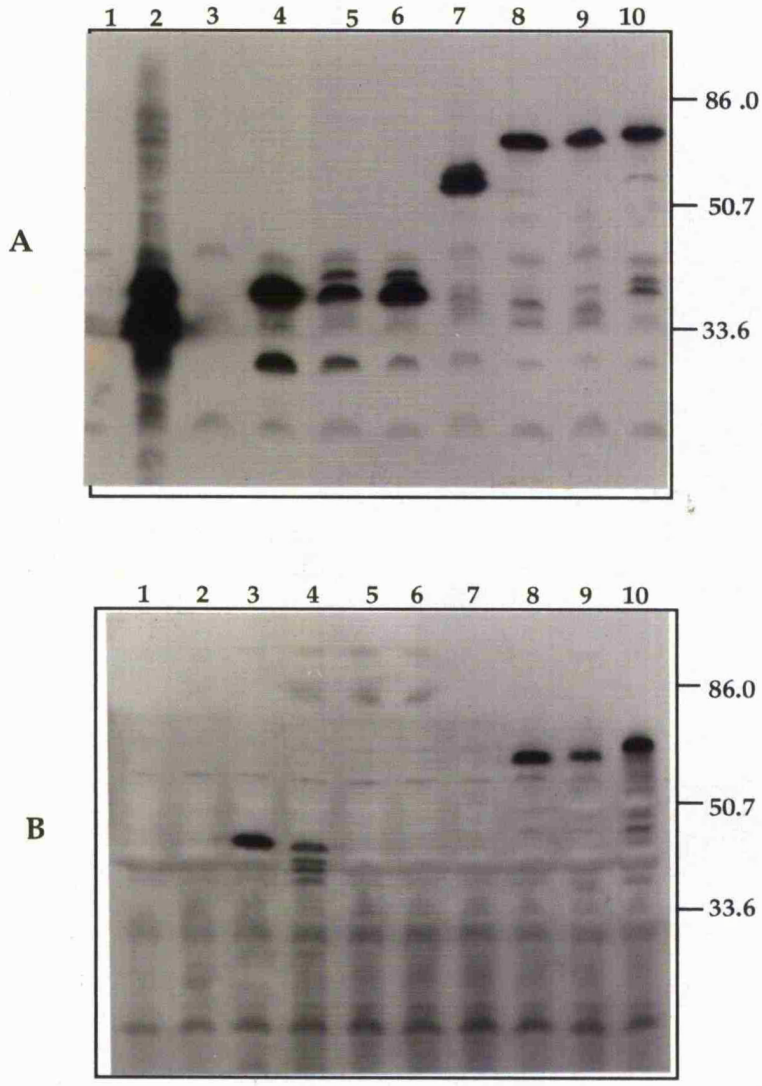


Figure 3.6. Western blot of KpsE-BlaM fusion proteins, using antibodies to both BlaM (A) and KpsE (B). Lane order: 1= JM101, 2= JM101pUC18, 3= JM101pCR6, 4= JM101pFE2::24, 5= JM101pFE7::41, 6= JM101pFE8::51, 7= JM101pFE3::211, 8= JM101pFE4::345, 9= JM101pFE5::361, 10= JM101pFE6::381. Molecular weight markers are in kDa.

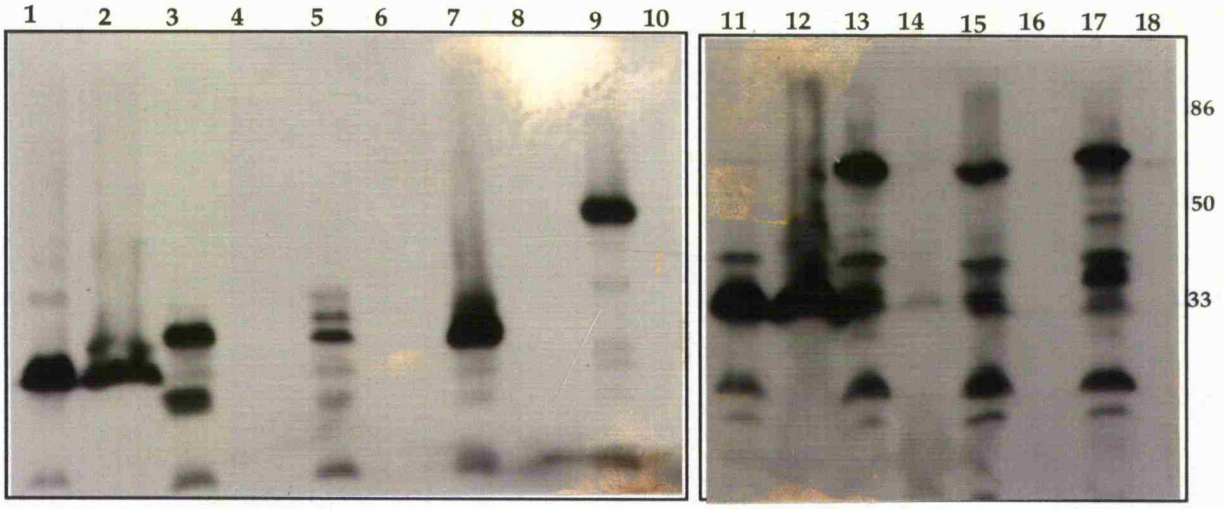


Figure 3.7. Western blot of cell fractions obtained from KpsE-BlaM fusion proteins. Lane order (left to right): cytoplasmic and periplasmic fractions; 1/2=JM101pBR, 3/4= JM101pFE2::24, 5/6= JM101pFE7::41, 7/8= JM101pFE8::51, 9/10= JM101pFE3::211, 11/12= JM101pBR, 13/14= JM101pFE4::345, 15/16= JM101pFE5::361, 17/18= JM101pFE6::381. Molecular weight markers are in kDa.

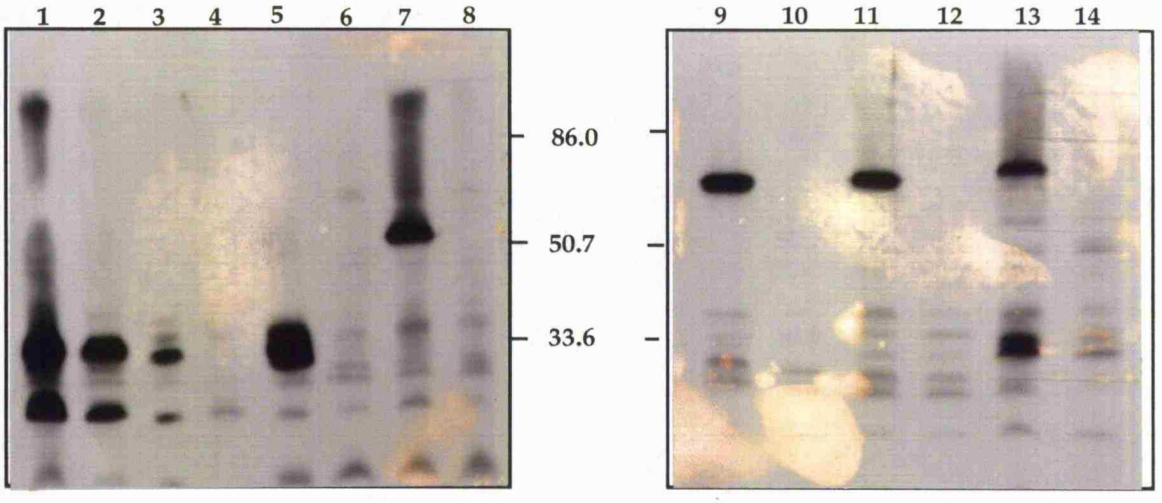


Figure 3.8. Western blot of spheroplast (untreated and proteinase K treated) made from KpsE-BlaM fusion proteins. Lane order (left to right): untreated and proteinase K treated; 1/2= JM101pFE2::24, 3/4= JM101pFE7::41, 5/6= JM101pFE8::51, 7/8= JM101pFE3::211, 9/10= JM101pFE4::345, 11/12= JM101pFE5::361, 13/14= JM101pFE6::381. Molecular weight markers are in kDa.

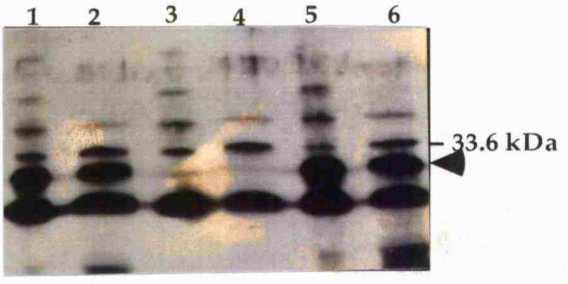


Figure 3.9. Western blot of spheroplast obtained from KpsE-BlaM fusion protein, pFE6::381 probed with antibody to CAT. Lane order (left to right): untreated and proteinase K treated; 1/2= JM101pACYC, 3/4= JM101pFE6::381, 5/6= JM101pFE6/pACYC. The position of the CAT protein is indicated with an arrow head.

amino acid substitutions into account, the similarity is extended to 65.0%, 59.5%, 65.6% and 58.0% respectively. A similar analysis between the KpsE and the BexC protein of *H. influenzae* and the CtrB protein of *N. meningitidis* capsule gene clusters revealed 28.1% identity (73.2% similarity) and 26.8% identity (73.2% similarity) respectively. Multiple alignment of the predicted amino acid sequences of these membrane fusion proteins and the KpsE (Figure 3.10) revealed similar aligned residues that was observed for the MFP family by Dinh *et al*. (1994), that of mainly hydrophobic (L, V and I) with a few structural (G) and strongly hydrophilic (E and Q), immediately adjacent to the transmembrane hydrophobic segment and before the hydrophobic stretch towards the C-terminus. A phylogenetic tree plot for the five sequences analysed and those of BexC and CtrB (proteins that share great similarity with the KpsE) showed that the polysaccharide exporting BexC and CtrB proteins constitute a subcluster, while the HasE and PrtE constitute another. The colicin V (CvaA), haemolysin (HlyD) and polysaccharide (KpsE) transporters each forming a distinct sub-branch (Figure 3.11).

```
            104                                                    154
KPSE (56)    SKV---AIKRSDDLNSGSLNFGLLLGASNPSSAEDALYLKEYINSPDMLA
CVAA (63)    GFVVRQFVHEGQLIKKGDPVYLIDISKSTRNGIVTDNHRRDIENQLVRVD
HASE (72)    GVVSQIQVHEGDRVRAGQVLLLMDTVDSRTQRDALRSQHLSNAAQQARLQ
HLYD (105)   SIVKEIIVKEGESVRKGDVLLKLTALGAEADTLKTQSSLLQARLEQIRYQ
PRTE (77)    GIVDRIQVKDGDRVAAGQVLLTLNAVDARTTSEGLGSQYDQLIAREARLL
                      *  *    *     *    *   *       *   **    *
             G V    V     V  G     L    S


            320                                                    371
KPSE (222)   VLDPQAQAQA----ASTLVNTLMGQKIQMEADLRNLLTYLREDAPQVVSAR
CVAA (237)   ELVNTDVEGE-----IIIRALSDGKVDSLSV-TVGQMVNTGDSLLQVIPEN
HASE (272)   ELDNRLAKAEADLGHTQVKAPVAGTVVGLSVFTEGGVIGAGQQLMEIVPSD
HLYD (313)   LLTLELEKNEERQQASVIRAPVSGKVQQLKVHTEGGVVTTAETLMVIVPED
PRTE (283)   EVISQREKADFNLANVQVRAPVAGTVVDMKIFTEGGVIAPGQVMMDIVPED
             **  *          **       *   **            *   ***
              L              V     G    L     G V         IV


            376                                                    428
KPSE (274)   LQAQID-EEKSKITAPQGDKLNRMAVDFEEIKS-KVEFNTELYKLTLTSIEK
CVAA (287)   LILWVPNDAVPYISA--GDKVNIRYEAFPSEKFGQFSATVKTISRTPASTQE
HASE (327)   VEARIPVELIDKVQV--GLPVELLFSAFNQSTTPRVEGEVTLVGADRLTDEK
HLYD (368)   VTALVQNKDIGFINV--GQNAIIKVEAFPYTRYGYLVGKVKNINLDAIEDQK
PRTE (338)   VDGRIPVEMVDKVWS--GLPVELQFTAFSQSTTPRVPGTVTLLSADRLVDEK
             * *    *   ** *  *** *     *   *   **    *  *   * **
             V  I       I    G         F                      E
```

Figure 3.10. Multiple alignment of the KpsE protein and four members of the MFPs. Alignment positions in the complete multiple alignment of the five proteins are shown above the alignment. The figures in bracket showing residue numbers in each protein are provided at the beginning of each line. Identical residues (*) between the KpsE and any of the MFPs , and similar residues are shown below the alignment.

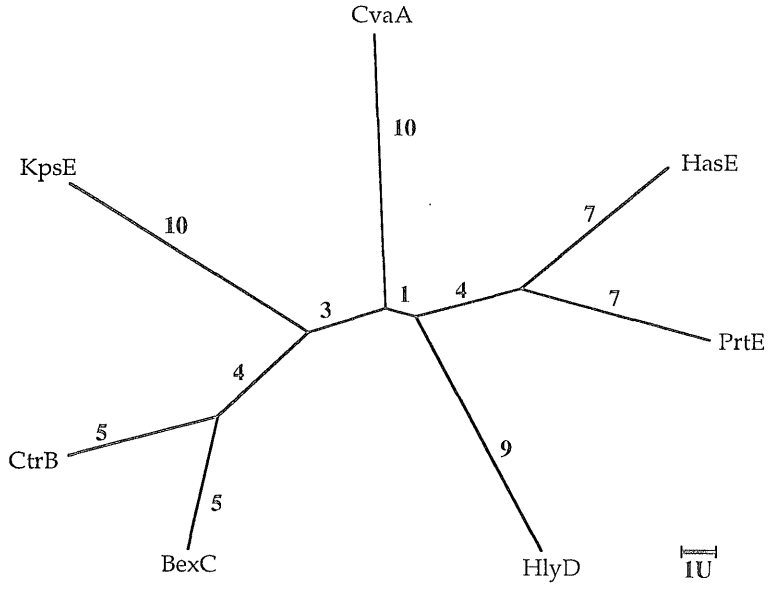


Figure 3.11. Phylogenetic tree for the KpsE, BexC, CtrB proteins and members of the MFP family. Relative evolutionary distance is proportional to branch length, which is given in arbitrary unit adjacent to the branch. Tree was drawn from the dendrogram data in the multiple alignment output using the Phylogenetic Inference Package (PHYLIP 3.4) of Joseph Felsensteen and the University of Washington (Copyright 1986-1993).

3.2.4 Construction of *kpsE* Null Mutation Within the Capsule Gene Cluster

The need for the construction of a *kpsE* null mutation within the capsule gene cluster on the chromosome arose from the fact that previous *kpsE* mutants constructed through insertion of an oligonucleotide within the gene and through the deletion of the entire gene (Pazzani, 1993) resulted in polarity effect on the expression of downstream genes and were therefore unsuitable for structure-function studies. The construction of a null *kpsE* mutant involved making a translational in-frame internal deletion within the KpsE protein encoded in a plasmid, which was then delivered unto the capsule gene cluster in the chromosome by allelic exchange. The strategy is outlined in figure 3.12.

The suicide vector pCVD442 (Donnenberg and Kaper, 1991) was chosen. Plasmid pCVD442 contains the R6K origin of replication, the *mob* region from plasmid RP4, the *sacB* gene from *Bacillus subtilis* and a *bla* gene conferring resistance to ampicillin (Donnenberg and Kaper, 1991). Replication at the R6K origin requires π protein (Kolter *et al* ., 1978) which is not encoded in the pCVD442 and thus can only replicate in strains that supply the π protein *in trans* . The pCVD442 derivative carrying truncated *kpsE* gene is unable to replicate in the *pir*$^-$ MS101 strain, but on ampicillin resistance selection, merodiploid strains in which pCVD442 derivative has integrated into the chromosome can be isolated. Integration occurs through homologous recombination. A second recombination event can be selected in which the truncated *kpsE* gene replaces the wild-type copy within the capsule gene cluster and the loss of the suicide vector. This selection involves the *sacB* gene, which encodes the enzyme levan sucrase. The expression of this enzyme is toxic for Gram negative bacteria when grown in the presence of 5% sucrose (Blomfield *et al* ., 1991). It means therefore, that when the merodiploid is cultured in the absence of ampicillin selection and plated onto sucrose containing medium, only colonies which have lost the suicide vector will be able to grow (Figure 3.12).

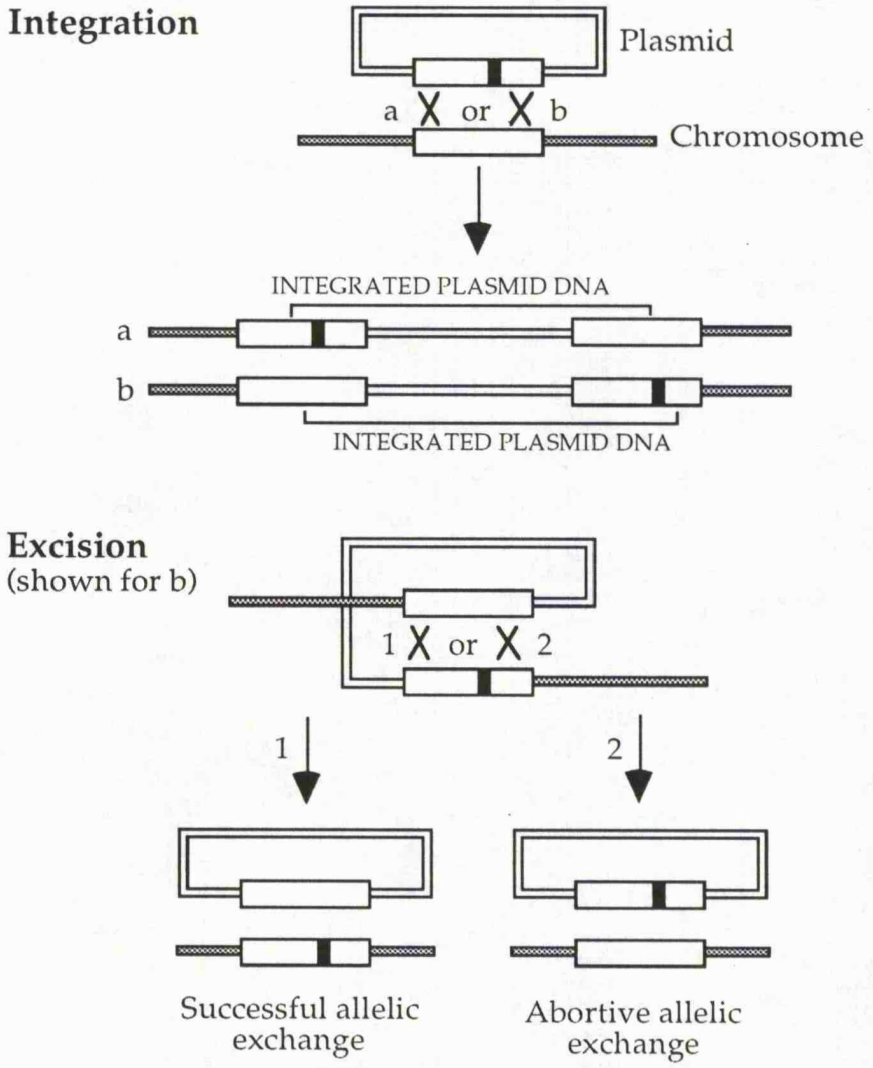


Figure 3.12. Recombination events required for the transfer of a plasmid borne allele onto the chromosome. Integration can occur by recombination on either side of the plasmid allele (a or b). For excision to lead to successful allelic exchange, recombination must occur in the second region of homology. Adapted from Blomfield *et al.* (1991).

The *kpsE* gene was subcloned from plasmid pFE2 on a *Xba* I-*Sac* I fragment ligated into *Xba* I-*Sac* I linearised pUC19 to generate plasmid pFE9. The use of *Xba* I-*Sac* I sites eliminates the *BamH* I in pUC19. Plasmid pFE9 was then linearised using *BamH* I and *Dra* III that cut within the *kpsE* gene resulting in a 200 bp deletion (Figure 3.13). The 5' overhang left from the *BamH* I digest was end-filled with dNTPs and the 3' overhang produced from the *Dra* III digest was end repaired using T4 DNA polymerase (Figure 3.13B). The resulting blunt ends were ligated together to produce plasmid pFE10 (Figure 3.14). This plasmid encodes a truncated KpsE protein which has a deletion of 65 amino acid residues (from 225 to 290). The deleted *kpsE* gene in pFE10 was then subcloned as a *Sph* I-*Sac* I fragment in pCVD442 to yield plasmid pFE11 (Figure 3.14). *E. coli* SY327λpir was used as a host to isolate the recombinant plasmid. Plasmid pFE11 was then transformed into *E. coli* SM10λpir and introduced into MS101 by conjugation with selection for ampicillin and streptomycin resistant colonies. Strain SY327λpir was not used to mobilise pFE11 (pCVD442 derivative) since it lacks the RP4 transfer genes.

The integration of plasmid pFE11 into the correct site within the capsule genes in the chromosome (Figure 3.15) was confirmed by Southern blot of *BamH* I digested chromosomal DNA prepared from ampicillin resistant transconjugants (Figure 3.16) using the 1.2 kb PCR amplified *kpsE* DNA (see figure 3.3A) as a probe. Chromosomal DNA from *E. coli* strain MS101, which has the K5 capsule gene cluster in its normal place on the chromosome was used as a control (Lane 1, figure 3.16). Plasmid pFE11 has lost the *BamH* I site within the *kpsE* gene, therefore integration occurring on either side of the plasmid allele (a and b in figure 3.12) resulted in a change of the native 11.0 and 5.2 kb *BamH* I fragments to produce two sets of fragment sizes (11, 6.2 and 1.0 kb, and 11.6, 5.5 and 1.1 kb, figure 3.16 lanes 2 and 3 respectively) (see figure 3.15). Strains in which the pFE11 had integrated in the correct site were found to be K5 phage sensitive, however this could be due to the presence of a functional wild-type copy of the *kpsE* gene(see figure 3.12).

The selection for double recombinants was carried out by growing a merodiploid of MS101 in which the pFE11 had integrated correctly within the capsule gene to late logarithmic phase in L-broth in the absence of ampicillin. The culture dilutions (10^{-1}-10^{-4}) were plated onto L-agar (lacking sodium chloride) containing 6% sucrose and streptomycin, followed by incubation overnight at 30°C, as reported by Blomfield *et al* .

(1991) to be optimal for selection of double recombinants. Sucrose resistant colonies were plated in duplicate onto media containing streptomycin alone and streptomycin with ampicillin, to check for the loss of suicide vector. Sucrose resistant, ampicillin sensitive isolates were checked for the presence of the truncated *kpsE* gene. Chromosomal DNA prepared from these isolates was digested with *BamH* I and a Southern blot carried out using the PCR amplified *kpsE* DNA as probe. The truncated gene in plasmid pFE11 has lost the *BamH* I site, therefore the native 11.0 kb and 5.2 kb *BamH* I fragments in MS101 produced a band shift to 16.0 kb in the isolated mutants (Figure 3.17). The replacement of the normal copy by the truncated *kpsE* gene in the chromosome was confirmed by colony PCR using primers 5′-GGGGTACCCGCCCACTGAAACTTTGAT-3′ and 5′-CGGAATTCCCCGGGATCTTCAATAACAGC-3′, that amplify the *kpsE* gene. The result showed a 1.1 kb PCR product for MS101 chromosomal DNA and a 0.9 kb amplified product for the mutants (Figure 3.18).

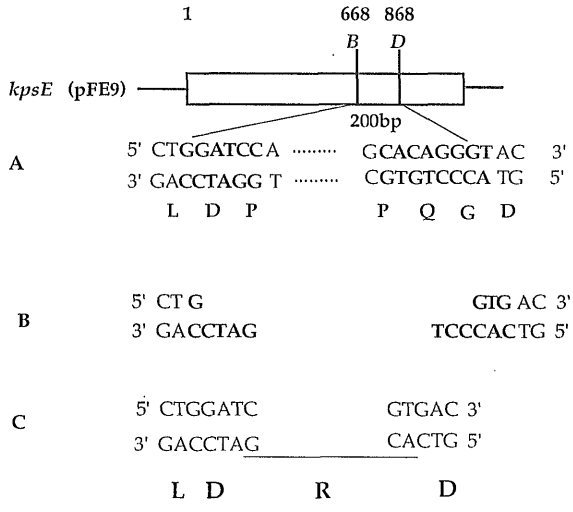


Figure 3.13. Construction of translational in-frame deletion in KpsE. The *BamH* I and *Dra* III sites are shown in bold (A). The 5′ and 3′ overhangs resulting from restriction digest are shown (B). The resulting amino acid residues after end-filling/exonuclease and ligation are shown in bold below the nucleotide sequence (C).

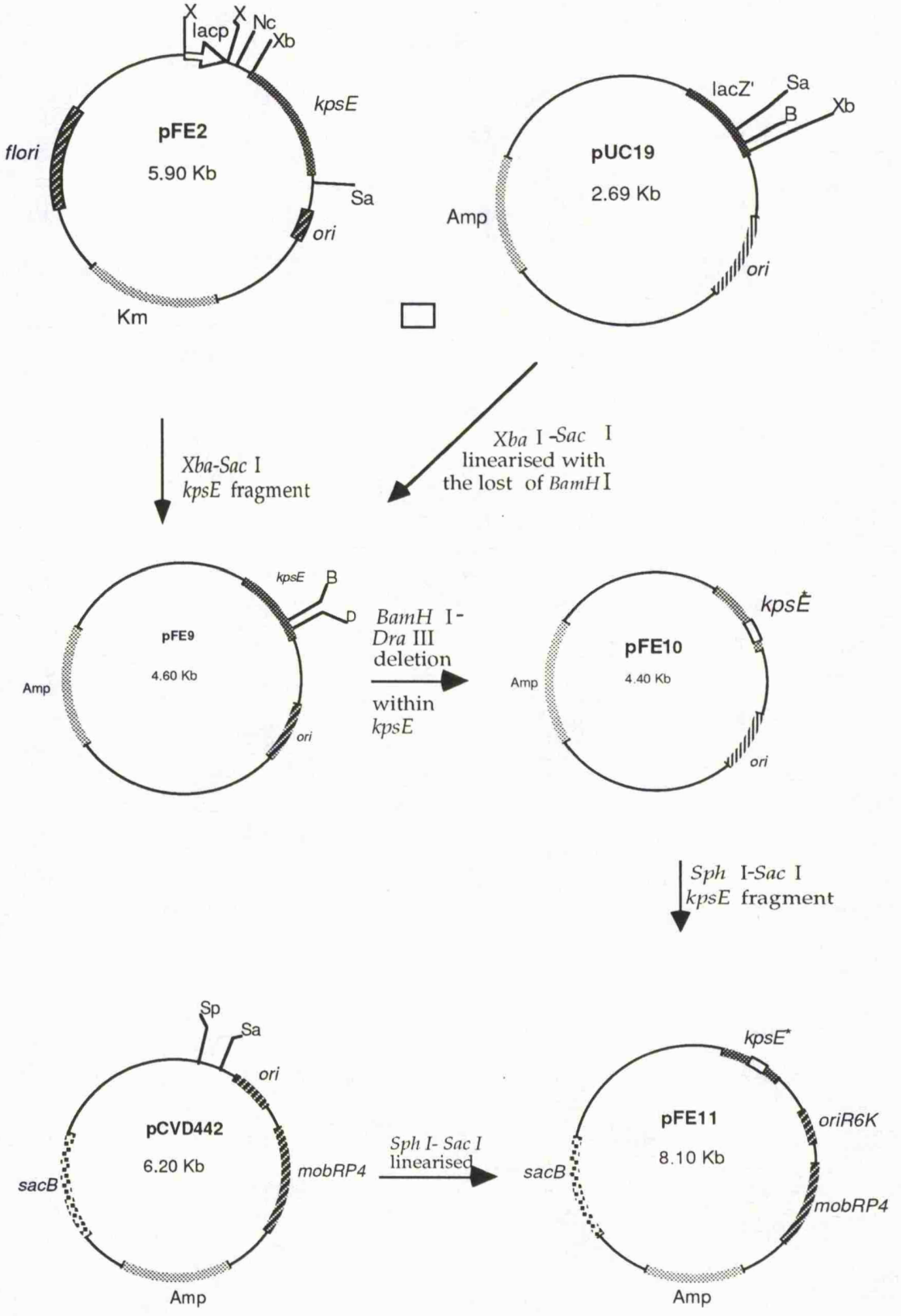


Figure 3.14. Construction of plasmids pFE9, pFE10 and pFE11. Plasmid pFE11 was used for integration into the chromosome of strain MS101. Abbreviations: B, *Bam* HI; D, *Dra* III; Nc, *Nco* I; Sa, *Sac* I; Sp, *Sph* I; X, *Xmn* I and Xb, *Xba* I.

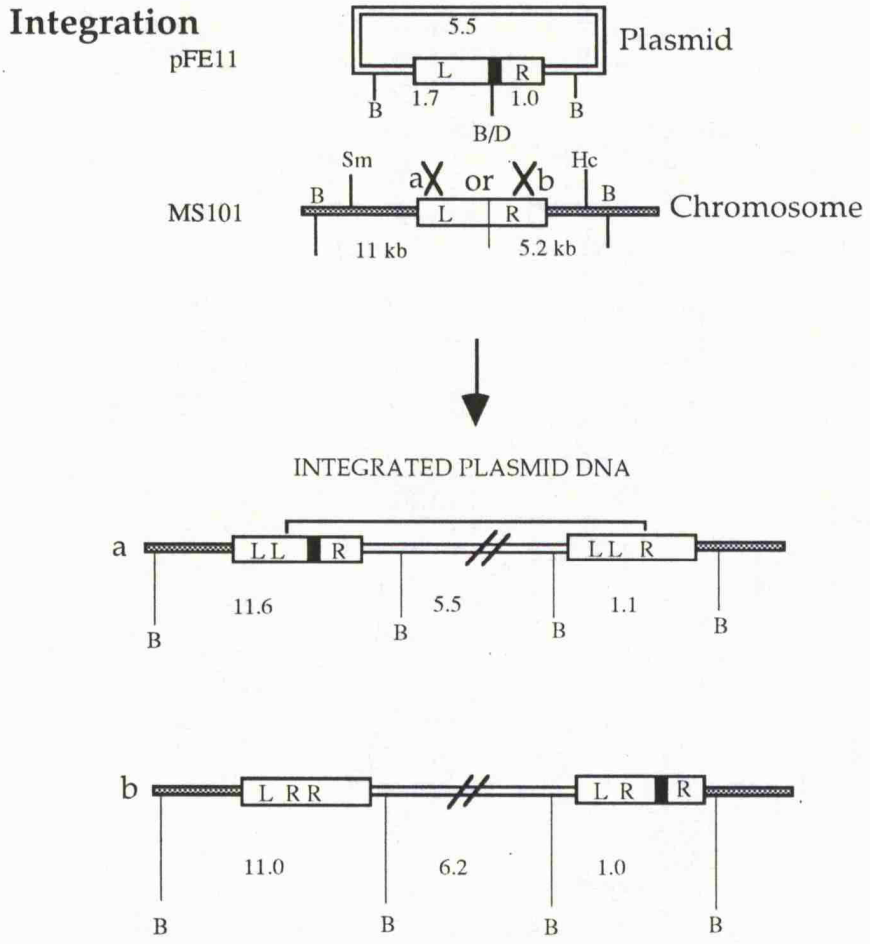


Figure 3.15 Recombination events showing the integration of plasmid pFE11 into the capsule gene cluster in MS101. L and R denotes respectively left and right sides of the deleted *kpsE* segment. Sizes are in kilobase. Abbreviation: B, *Bam* HI; D, *Dra* III; Hc, *Hinc* II; Sm, *Sma* I.

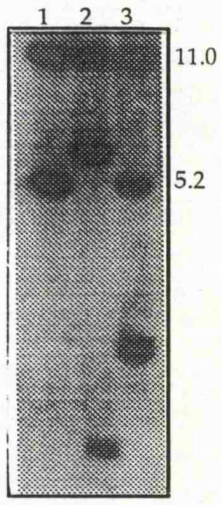


Figure 3.16. Southern blot of *Bam H* I digested chromosomal DNA from MS101(lane 1) and MS101 merodiploids containing pFE11 (lanes 2 and 3). A 1.2 kb PCR-amplified *kpsE* fragment was used as probe. The sizes shown are in kb and were determined by comparison to λDNA fragments obtained from *Hind* III digest.

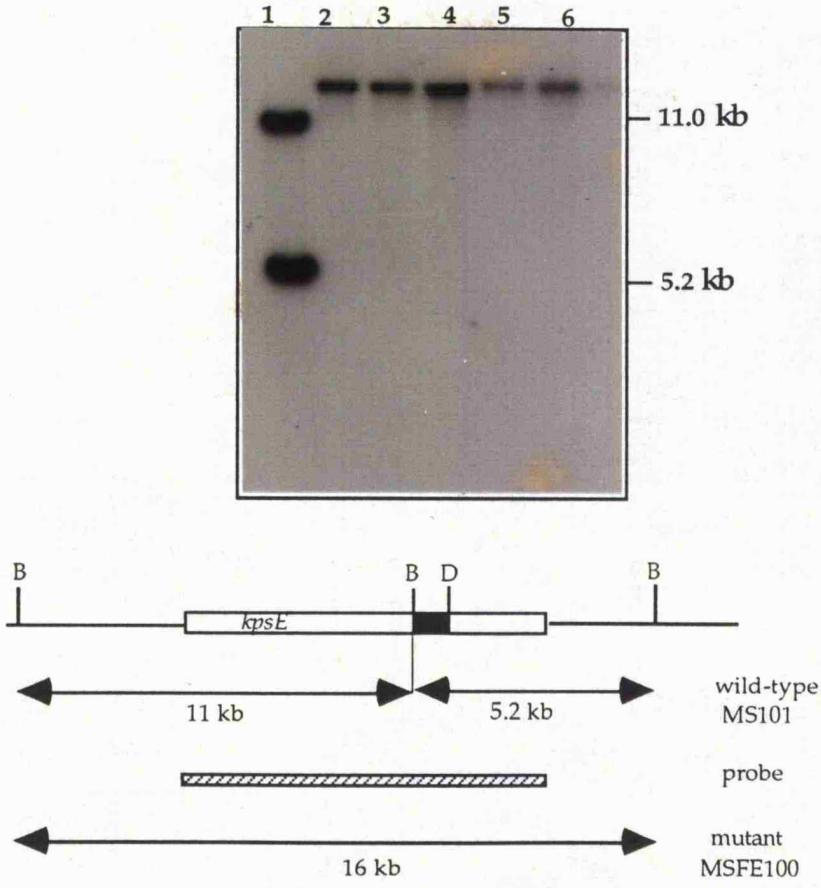


Figure 3.17. Southern blot analysis of *BamH* I digested chromosomal DNA from MS101 (track 1) and MSFE100 (tracks 2-6). A 1.2 kb PCR-amplified *kpsE* DNA product was used as probe. This is represented below the gel photograph. Dark box denotes the deleted *kpsE* segment.

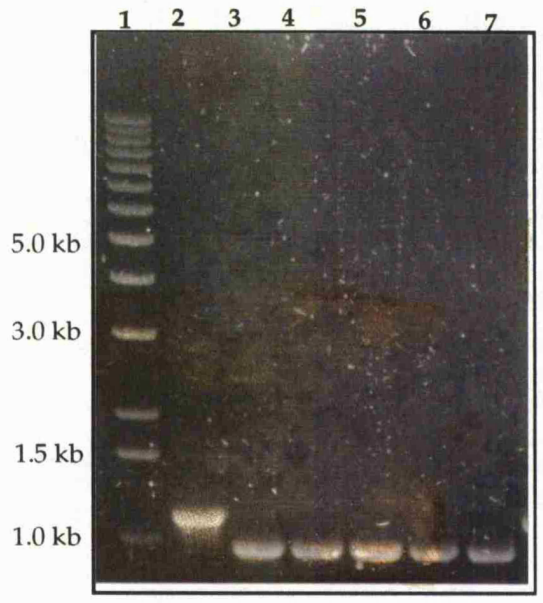


Figure 3.18. Confirmation of the retention of truncated *kpsE* gene in MSFE100 by PCR. Chromosomal DNA from MS101 (lane 2) and from 6 MSFE100 strains (lanes 3-7). DNA ladder (lane 1) was used for size markers.

3.2.4.1 Phenotype of MSFE100

The mutant carrying the mutated *kpsE* gene in the chromosome is designated MSFE100 and the encoded truncated protein of 36 kDa was demonstrated in Western blotting using antibody to the KpsE protein (Figure 3.19). The phenotype of MSFE100 as assessed by K5-specific bacteriophage assay showed that the mutant is resistant to the phage. This result means that the mutant has lost its ability to export capsular polysaccharide to the cell surface.

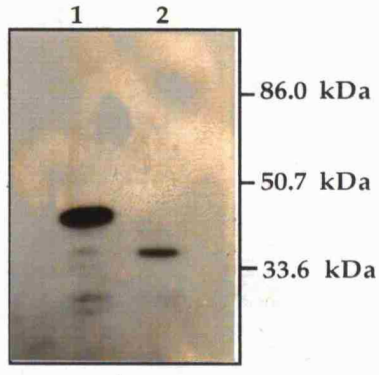


Figure 3.19. Western blot analysis of the KpsE protein in MS101 (lane 1) and MSFE100 (lane 2) using anti-KpsE antibody.

3.2.4.2 Complementation of *kpsE* Mutation in MSFE100

To ascertain if the mutation in MSFE100 can be complemented by a functional copy of the *kpsE* gene, several plasmids carrying the *kpsE* gene were transformed into this strain and the resulting transformants were assayed for sensitivity to K5-specific bacteriophage. Plasmids pH18 and pFE9 in which the *kpsE* gene is cloned in the high copy number vectors pUC18 (Table 2.2) and pUC19 (Figure 3.14) respectively were able to complement the *kpsE* mutation in MSFE100 and restore K5-phage sensitivity (Table 3.2). Neither plasmid pFE2, which contains an intact *kpsE* gene cloned in pYZ4, nor plasmids pFE3-9 containing truncated derivatives of the *kpsE* gene,

were able to complement MSFE100 (Table 3.2). The introduction of plasmid pPC6, which contains the entire K5 capsule gene cluster (Pazzani *et al* ., 1993) into MSFE100 resulted in turbid K5-phage plaques. This is indicative of the profound effect on the cell surface expression of capsular polysaccharide exerted by the null *kpsE* mutant.

Table 3.2. Complementation of *kpsE* Mutation in MSFE100

Strain/Plasmid	Sensitivity to K5-specific phage
LE392	R
MSFE100	R
MSFE100pFE2-pFE8	R
MSFE100pH18	S
MSFE100pFE9	S
MSFE100pPC6	S*
LE392pPC6	S
MS101	S

Abbreviation: R, resistance; S, sensitive; S*, turbid plaque morphology.

3.3 Discussion

The KpsE protein is known to be involved in the cell surface expression of the *E. coli* K5 capsular polysaccharide. To further gain an insight into the possible role in the export of polysaccharide, the organisation of this protein within the bacterial cytoplasmic membrane was investigated.

From the hydropathic analysis of the predicted amino acid sequence and use of von Heijne's 'positive inside rule', a working model consisting of two transmembrane domains (residues 29-49 and 351-371) was proposed. The boundaries of transmembrane domains were chosen to minimise intramembrane charged residues. These transmembrane domains are in agreement with those predicted for the KpsE protein using the PHDhtm profile neural network system of Rost *et al* .(1994). This model was analysed using gene fusion techniques. Whilst the low level of Amp^r conferred by a BlaM fusion at amino acid position 24 suggests that this position of KpsE is cytoplasmic, the high levels conferred by BlaM fusion to positions 51, 211 and 345, and the isolation of $PhoA^+$ insertions at residues 54 and 56 are clear indications of the periplasmic locations of these positions. A relatively high Amp^r was recorded for fusion at amino acid

position 41 compared to fusion at position 361 (two inner membrane locations, from the model). This observation is consistent with the finding of N-terminal hydrophobic domains that may function in translocating the protein in question across the cytoplasmic membrane (Roof *et al* ., 1991; Calamia and Beckwith, 1992; Uhland *et al* ., 1994; Vianney *et al* ., 1994). The 15μgml^{-1} Amp^r conferred by BlaM fusion at position 381 as opposed to the <5μgml^{-1} resistance by fusion at position 24 suggests that the C-terminus of KpsE is membrane associated rather than inserting into the cytoplasm. The accessibility of BlaM at position 381 to proteinase K of spheroplast and the lack of net positive charge at the C-terminus is in keeping with this model. Cell fractionation results showed that the KpsE-BlaM fusion proteins are membrane associated and thus in keeping with the prediction that the KpsE protein is anchored in the cytoplasmic membrane probably via the N-terminus.

The visualisation of KpsE-BlaM fusion proteins using anti-β-lactamase antibodies showed that there was no correlation between the amount of protein expressed and the deduced localisation of the β-lactamase protein. The conferred Amp^r by different fusion proteins are therefore true reflection of the position of these segments within the membrane. Thus the KpsE protein has a membrane topology consisting of a short hydrophilic N-terminus in the cytoplasm, followed by a single transmembrane domain, a large periplasmic region of about 302 amino acid residues and a C-terminus that is membrane associated. While it is tempting from the topological model and the low Amp^r results of BlaM fusions at amino acid positions 361 and 381 to conclude that the most C-terminal 31 amino acid residues are associated with the cytoplasmic membrane, it is possible that this region of the KpsE protein could be located in the outer membrane. The lack of data on Amp^r values of β-lactamase fusions to outer membrane locations makes interpretations of the possible membrane association of the KpsE C-terminus the more difficult. A second limitation that could account for this problem, which can be attributed to β-lactamase and other commonly used (alkaline phosphatase and β-galactosidase) gene fusion techniques is that these enzyme moieties are too large and may interfere with the folding and thus the localisation of the protein under study. More recently, small reporter epitope (C3 neutralisation epitope from poliovirus) tagging, recognised by specific monoclonal antibody was used in determining the topology of the outer membrane protein LamB, and of the 23 hybrid LamB-C3 proteins generated, nine of them did not lead to topological conclusions (Newton *et*

al ., 1996), thus underlining the limitations of genetic foreign epitope insertion for the study of integral membrane proteins. Regardless, of the location of the C-terminus, the KpsE topology within the bacterial membrane is that of a type II bitopic membrane protein, with a single N-terminal membrane spanning domain preceded by a large amino acid segment that is capable of spanning the periplasm.

Although the precise functional mechanism of the KpsE and other members of the MFP proteins has not been elucidated, the result presented here shows that KpsE shares structural features with the HlyD (Mackman *et al* ., 19985), PrtE (Delepelaire and Wandersman, 1991), HasE (Letoffe *et al.*, 1994) and CvaA (Skvirsky *et al* ., 1995), proteins involved in the export of substrate across both membranes. The alignment of the predicted amino acid sequence of KpsE protein with the HlyD (required for export of α-haemolysin in *E. coli*), PrtE (protease export in *E. chrysanthemi*), HasE (heme acquisition protein in *S. marcescens*) and CvaA (involved in colicin V export in *E. coli*) revealed conserved residues that have been observed in members of the MFP family. As has been noted (Dinh *et al* ., 1994), most of these conserved residues are structural (G and P), hydrophobic (L, V, I and A) and a few strongly hydrophilic residues (E and Q), although the functional significance of this residue conservation is not known. In addition, the KpsE like the CvaA, HlyD and PrtE fractionate primarily with the inner membrane. The membrane topology of KpsE presented is consistent with the proposed function of the MFP proteins, which are thought to act in connecting the inner and outer membranes and hence promote transport to the cell exterior.

Whilst the feature of the MFP proteins points to conserved functional mechanism, results of the phylogenetic tree showed that the KpsE as well as CvaA and HlyD each represents distinct sub-branches, while the HasE and PrtE form a subcluster. Both the BexC and CtrB proteins involved in the export of polysaccharide in *H. influenzae* and *N. meningitidis* respectively are homologous to the KpsE protein, however the phylogenetic analysis showed that both proteins form a subcluster, indicative of evolutional divergence between KpsE and both proteins. Indeed, the KpsE protein was found to be relatively closer to the CvaA protein, with evolutional distance of 3 units as oppose to the 4 units between the KpsE and the BexC/CtrB cluster. This evolutional divergence of the KpsE from the other proteins, BexC and CtrB also involved in polysaccharide export might reflect specificity in substrate being exported or

differences in organisation of the protein complex involved in the cell surface expression of capsular polysaccharide in these bacteria. The lack of an outer membrane protein in *E. coli* , and a periplasmic protein in *N. meningitidis* and *H. influenzae* capsule gene clusters is in keeping with the later. The phylogenetic grouping of MFP is said to correlate with types of cytoplasmic membrane transport systems with which they function and with the substrate being transported (Dinh *et al* ., 1994). This observation is particularly in agreement with the phylogenetic findings of the polysaccharide (KpsE, BexC and CtrB) and the protein (HasE, HlyD and PrtE) exporters each clustering at different sides of the tree while the peptide exporter (CvaA) represents a distinct branch.

The construction of the *KpsE* null mutant, with an inframe deletion of 65 amino acid within the last 160 amino acid residues of the encoded protein proved sufficient to disrupt the export of capsular polysaccharide to the cell surface. The deleted residues are within the large periplasmic spanning domain of the KpsE protein, that is likely to interact with the periplasmic KpsD protein and may be functionally significant in the role of KpsE in the export of polysaccharide to the cell surface. The last 170 amino acid residues are also essential for the recognition of the KpsE protein by the KpsE antisera as demonstrated by Western blot analysis of proteins encoded by the truncated *kpsE* gene products (Figure 3.6B). The *kpsE* mutant (MSFE100) was complemented by a functional copy of the *kpsE* gene, which indicates that the deletion within *kpsE* did not result in any polarity effect on the expression of the downstream genes. In addition, the truncated KpsE product encoded in strain MSFE100 has been confirmed in Western blot analysis using antibody to the KpsE protein (Figure 3.19). The complementation of the *kpsE* mutant (MSFE100) using plasmid pPC6 resulted in K5-phage turbid plaque in contrast to clear 'normal' plaque morphology observed when plasmids pH18 and pFE9 in which the *kpsE* gene is cloned in high copy number vectors (see section 3.2.4.2) were used. This observation suggests that the *KpsE* mutant exhibits a dominant negative effect on the biosynthetic/export complex postulated to be involved in the expression of group II capsules (Roberts, 1995, 1996; Bliss and Silver, 1996) Therefore, the construction of a non-polar *KpsE* mutant in the chromosome has provided a base to conduct detail structure-function analysis of the last 160 amino acid residues to ascertain their importance for the KpsE role in the cell surface expression of capsular polysaccharide.

Chapter 4

Cloning and Sequencing of the K5 Lyase Enzyme from the K5-specific bacteriophage.

4.1 Introduction

The K5 capsular antigen is a polymer with the structure 4)-β-GlcA-(1,4)-α-GlcNAc-(1 (Vann *et al* ., 1981) and essentially represents desulfo heparin, an intermediate in heparin biosynthesis. Oligosaccharides chemically derived from *E. coli* K5 capsular polysaccharide has been used as acceptor for both GlcA and GlcNAc transferase reaction implicated in heparin biosynthesis (Lidholt and Lindahl, 1992). The isolation of a coliphage specific for *E. coli* expressing the K5 capsular antigen was described by Gupta *et al* . (1982b). This phage has been used in typing of *E. coli* K5 strains (Gupta *et al* ., 1982a,b). On further analysis, the K5-specific phage was found to posses a lyase enzyme that hydrolysed the K5 capsular polysaccharide. The K5 lyase enzyme is highly specific for the 1,4 linkage between the glucoronic acid and the N-acetylneuraminic acid, yielding oligosaccharides that could serve as substrates for the study of both heparin and K5 polymer biosynthesis. In addition, the high specificity of the lyase enzyme for the K5 capsular polysaccharide could be exploited in developing rationales for the diagnosis and treatment of infections caused by strains of *E. coli* K5.

In order to produce large amounts of the K5 lyase enzyme it was decided to clone and overexpress the lyase encoding gene from the K5-specific bacteriophage in *E. coli* .

4.2 Results

4.2.1 Construction of a Bacteriophage K5 Genomic Library

In order to increase the expression of the cloned gene(s) in *E. coli* , the plasmid expression vector pTTQ18 (Stark, 1987) was chosen. This vector

contains a *tac* promoter the activity of which can be induced by the addition of IPTG. In addition, pTTQ18 contains a *lac* repressor gene to ensure that there is no transcription in the absence of IPTG (Figure 4.1B). This vector is therefore suitable for the expression of cloned gene(s) that may be lethal for cell growth (Stark, 1987). The genes of interest are cloned 3' to the *tac* promoter such that addition of IPTG leads to an increase in transcription. To ensure that the genomic DNA library will contain a high proportion of recombinants, the *Bam*HI cleaved vector DNA was treated with calf intestinal phosphatase to remove the 5′ terminal phosphate. The removal of 5′ terminal phosphate was confirmed by the visualisation in agarose gel electrophoresis of predominantly linear vector DNA band in the self-ligated vector mixture. The cloning into the *Bam*HI site results in insertional inactivation of the *lac*Z′ gene. This allows the identification of recombinants which are unable to breakdown X-Gal thus appearing as white colonies, while the non-recombinants appear as blue colonies.

The 45 kb genomic DNA of the K5 bacteriophage was partially cleaved with the restriction endonuclease *Sau*3A to generate DNA fragments in the range of 0.1 to >12 kb. Fragments were analysed by agarose gel electrophoresis and fragment ranges of 0.9 to 2.0 kb and 2.1 to 7.0 kb were isolated from the gel (Figure 4.1A). Approximately 0.5µg of dephosphorylated vector DNA was self-ligated as a control or with approximately 0.5µg of each isolated DNA fragment range in a final volume of 10µl. *E. coli* SURE™ was electrotransformed with 2µl of each ligation mixture, selecting for ampicillin resistance colonies. The bacteriophage K5 gene library generated a total of 804 transformants, which were screened for the presence of insert DNA by plating transformants on L-agar containing ampicillin, 1mM IPTG and 0.004% X-Gal for blue or white colony screening. Of these 88% were white (Lac^-) colonies, containing a cloned DNA insert. Plasmid DNA was isolated from 50 recombinants and insert DNA confirmed by restriction endonucleases. These recombinants were then screened for lyase activity.

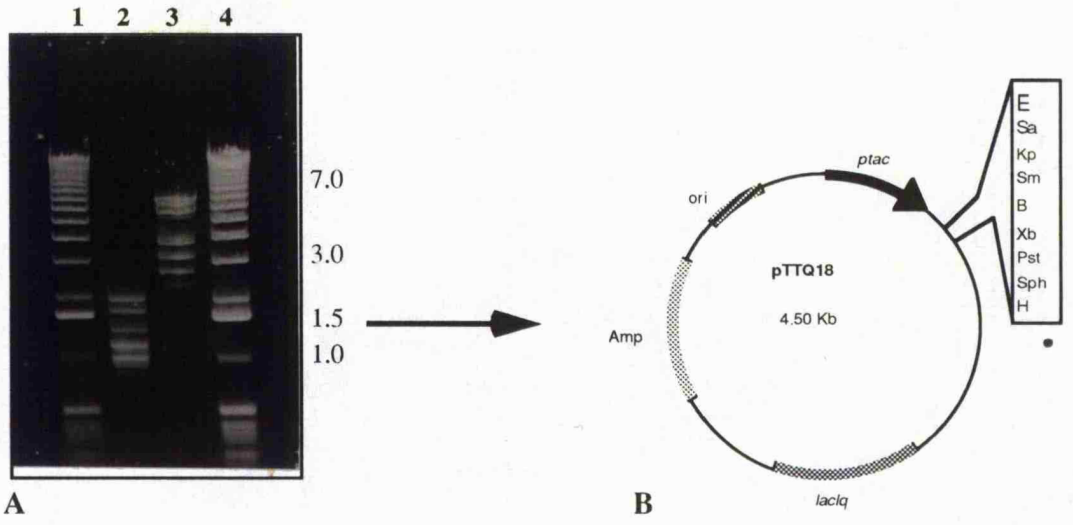


Figure 4.1. Size selected bacteriophage DNA fragments (lanes 2 and 3) (**A**) cloned in the expression vector pTTQ18 (**B**). Lanes 1 and 4 are kilobase molecular weight markers. Insert DNA were ligated into the *Bam*HI cleaved and dephosphorylated vector. Abbreviations: E; *Eco*RI, Sa; *Sac* I, Kp; *Kpn* I, Sm; *Sma* I, B; *Bam*HI, Xb; *Xba* I, Pst; *Pst* I, Sph; *Sph* I, H; *Hind* III.

4.2.2 Screening of Gene Library for Lyase Activity

The screening of the library was performed by Dr. Peter Hänfling in the laboratory of Professor Dr. K. Jann at the Max-Planck-Institute für Immunbiologie, Frieburg, Germany. Essentially, this involved growing pools of ten recombinants to mid logarithmic phase, then inducing the cells with 1mM IPTG for 2 hrs, followed by sonication to obtain the enzyme lysate. Equal volumes (20µl) of lysate was incubated with the K5 polysaccharide substrate (5mgml^{-1} in Tris buffer) at 37°C for 6 hrs. Samples were then resolved by PAGE in 1XTBE and gel stained for 3 hrs with Alcian Blue (see section 2.9). The cleavage of polysaccharide substrate was observed after destaining gel with 2% acetic acid in water. Positive pools of ten recombinants were individually screened in a similar manner to obtain a positive clone. A total of 244 recombinants were screened and of these, a positive clone which contains the largest insert DNA fragment was chosen for further analysis.

4.2.3 Nucleotide Sequence of K5 Lyase Clone, pB4

An isolated clone with lyase activity and containing approximately 2.8 kb bacteriophage K5 insert DNA was designated clone pB4. The nucleotide sequence of clone pB4 was determined using double stranded DNA template obtained from Maxiprep procedure (Qiagen). Sequence reactions were performed using the PRISM™ Ready Reaction DyeDeoxy™ Terminator Cycle Sequencing (Perkin Elmer). Initial 800 bp sequence was obtained using the -40 universal (5′-GTTTTCCCAGTCACGAC-3′) and reverse (5′-AACAGCTATGACCATG-3′) primers, which bind on either sides of the polylinker in pTTQ18. Oligonucleotide primers were successively generated based on the obtained sequences to cover the remaining 2.0 kb and both strands of the cloned DNA fragment. The DNA sequence of clone pB4 was found to be 2872 bp in length (Figure 4.2). Nucleotide sequence searches of the composite GenBank/EMBL database revealed significant DNA homology (83.0% identity) over the first 571 bp of the K5 lyase sequence and those of K1E endosialidase (Figure 4.3). Contained within this region is a putative bacteriophage SP6-like promoter region (302-351 nucleotides) 87 bp from the start of the first open

reading frame (ORF) (Figure 4.2). The promoter was identified on the basis of sequence similarities to those reported by Long *et al* . (1995) and Melton *et al* . (1984). It has the same AT bases located at position -2 and -3 of the guanine (G) residue at which transcription initiates in the SP6 promoter (see figure 4.2). These AT bases has been shown to be important functional elements of the SP6 promoter (Melton *et al* ., 1984).

4.2.4 Analysis of Deduced Amino Acid Sequence

Analysis of the reading frame in all six phases revealed two large ORFs, one of which exceeded the range of cloned DNA fragment (Figure 4.2). The two ORFs translated in opposite orientation to the direction of the LacZ' expression in plasmid pTTQ18. The largest complete open reading frame spans a DNA fragment of 1905 bp and encoded a protein of 635 amino acid residues, designated ORF 635. ORF 635 is immediately downstream of a putative SP6-like promoter region and encodes for a predicted protein of 66.9 kDa. The predicted amino acid sequence of this protein shares 50.8% and 50.7% similarities over the entire 635 residues with the bacteriophage K1E endosialidase and the PK1E encoded Endo NE proteins respectively (Figure 4.4), In addition, the predicted amino acid sequence of the putative 66.9 kDa protein is 54% identical (89.4% similarity) to a protein of 820 amino acid residues deposited in the database as Sequence 2 from patent US 5480800 (Figure 4.5). The putative 66.9 kDa protein has a predicted isoelectric point of 7.54. The second and incomplete ORF is located downstream of the putative 66.9 kDa protein and searches with the deduced amino acid sequence did not reveal any significant identity to sequences in the protein databases.

```
1   GATCACCTGTGAATAAGTTTCTAGAAGTTCTGGCAGGTCTTATTGGCCTGCTTGTCTCTG   60

61  CTAAGAAGAAACAAGAAGAGAAGGAGGCACCAAAGTGAAGCGAATCATGTTAGTGACCAA   120

121 CCCTTCTGATTGGTTCGCTGACCACTTCCGGGTGTCAGCAGGCGTTACCAGAGAAAGCAA   180

181 TGGTGAAACCTCTGAGGCCGACGCTGACGGCAGTTTACGAGGTAGACGATAAAGTCTGCT   240

241 TCAGTAAGCCTGATGCTACAAAATTAGGTTTGTATATTCTCTCGCTAGAACGCGGATATA   300
                    PROMOTER
301 ATTAATACATAGCTTTATGTATCAGTGTCTTACGATTTACTGGACACTATAGACGAGATA   360

361 CAGGTAGTGCCGTTCTTTAGAGCGGCCTATTACTAGCCAATCTTCATAGGGAGGGTTGGG   420
          SD
421 AAGTAATAGGAGTTAGCATGGCTAAATTAACCAAACCTAAGACTGAAGGAATCTTGCATC   480
                    M  A  K  L  T  K  P  K  T  E  G  I  L  H  Q   15

481 AAGGACAATCTTTGTATGAGTACCTTGATGCGAGAGTTTTAACATCAAAGTCGTTTGGTG   540
 16   G  Q  S  L  Y  E  Y  L  D  A  R  V  L  T  S  K  S  F  G  A   35

541 CTGCAGGTGACGCCACTACTGATGATACGGAGGTTATAGCTGCTTCACTAAACTCTCAAA   600
 36   A  G  D  A  T  T  D  D  T  E  V  I  A  A  S  L  N  S  Q  K   55

601 AAGCTGTCACAATCTCAGACGGTGTATTCTCTAGCTCTGGTATTAATAGTAATTACTGTA   660
 56   A  V  T  I  S  D  G  V  F  S  S  S  G  I  N  S  N  Y  C  N   75

661 ACTTAGACGGCAGGGGTAGTGGTGTGCTAAGTCACCGTTCCAGTACAGGTAACTACTTAG   720
 76   L  D  G  R  G  S  G  V  L  S  H  R  S  S  T  G  N  Y  L  V   95

721 TATTTAACAATCCACGTACAGTCGCTTTAAGTAATATTGCGGTAGAAAGTAATAAGCCGA   780
 96   F  N  N  P  R  T  V  A  L  S  N  I  A  V  E  S  N  K  P  T  115

781 CTGATTCAACTCAGGGACAGCAGGTATCTCTTGCTGGTGGAAGTGATGTTACTGTAAGTG   840
116   D  S  T  Q  G  Q  Q  V  S  L  A  G  G  S  D  V  T  V  S  D  135

841 ACGTTAACTTCTCAAACGTTAAAGGTACTGGTTTCAGTTTAATCGCATACCCTAATGATG   900
136   V  N  F  S  N  V  K  G  T  G  F  S  L  I  A  Y  P  N  D  A  155
```

```
901  CGCCACCTGATGGACTTATGATTAAAGGCATTCGAGGTAGCTATTCCGGCTATGCTACTA  960
156    P  P  D  G  L  M  I  K  G  I  R  G  S  Y  S  G  Y  A  T  N  175

961  ATAAGGCAGCCGGATGCGTACTTGCTGACTCCTCAGTTAACTCCCTCATAGATAACGTCA  1020
176    K  A  A  G  C  V  L  A  D  S  S  V  N  S  L  I  D  N  V  I  195

1021 TTGCTAAGAACTACCCTCAGTTCGGAGCAGTAGAGTTGAAAGGTACAGCCAGTTACCAAC 1080
196    A  K  N  Y  P  Q  F  G  A  V  E  L  K  G  T  A  S  Y  Q  H  215

1081 ATAGTCAGTTAATGTTAATCGGGCAGATTGCCAGCATGTTACTTACCAACGGCACTGAAG  1140
216    S  Q  L  M  L  I  G  Q  I  A  S  M  L  L  T  N  G  T  E  G  235

1141 GGGCAATAGCCCCTTCTAATAACCTTATCAAGGGGGTGATGGCTAATAACCCTAAGTATG  1200
236    A  I  A  P  S  N  N  L  I  K  G  V  M  A  N  N  P  K  Y  A  255

1201 CAGCGGTTGTTGCAGGCAAAGGAAGTACGAACTTAATCTCAGACGTGCTCGTAGATTACT 1260
256    A  V  V  A  G  K  G  S  T  N  L  I  S  D  V  L  V  D  Y  S  275

1261 CAACTTCTGATGCTAGGCAGGCTCATGGTGTTACCGAGGAAGGGTCTGATAACGTCATAA  1320
276    T  S  D  A  R  Q  A  H  G  V  T  E  E  G  S  D  N  V  I  N  295

1321 ATAATGTGCTTATGTCAGGATGTGATGGTACTAACTCTTTAGGACAAAGGCAGACTGCTA  1380
296    N  V  L  M  S  G  C  D  G  T  N  S  L  G  Q  R  Q  T  A  T  315

1381 CAATTGCACGCTTTATAGGTACAGCTAATAACAACTATGCGTCTGTATTTCCTAGCTACA  1440
316    I  A  R  F  I  G  T  A  N  N  N  Y  A  S  V  F  P  S  Y  S  335

1441 GCGCTACAGGTGTTATTACTTTCGAATCCGGCTCTACGCGTAACTTCGTAGAGGTAAAGC  1500
336    A  T  G  V  I  T  F  E  S  G  S  T  R  N  F  V  E  V  K  H  355

1501 ACCCTGGCAGGAGAAACGACCTTCTCAGTTCTGCTAGTACTATTGACGGTGCAGCTACTA  1560
356    P  G  R  R  N  D  L  L  S  S  A  S  T  I  D  G  A  A  T  I  375

1561 TTGGCGGCACTAGTAATAGTAACGTAGTGCACGCACCTGCCTTAGGGCAGTACATAGGTA  1620
376    G  G  T  S  N  S  N  V  V  H  A  P  A  L  G  Q  Y  I  G  S  395

1621 GTATGTCAGGTAGGTTCGAATGGCGGATTAAGTCCATGTCACTCCCTTCAGGCGTTCTTA  1680
396    M  S  G  R  F  E  W  R  I  K  S  M  S  L  P  S  G  V  L  T  415
```

```
1681  CTTCTGCTGATAAGTACAGAATGCTTGGGGATGGTGCTGTATCATTAGCTGTAGGTGGGG  1740
 416    S  A  D  K  Y  R  M  L  G  D  G  A  V  S  L  A  V  G  G  G   435

1741  GTACTTCTTCTCAAGTTCGCCTATTTACTTCTGATGGTACTTCTCGGACAGTGTCCCTCA  1800
 436    T  S  S  Q  V  R  L  F  T  S  D  G  T  S  R  T  V  S  L  T   455

1801  CCAACGGTAACGTGCGTCTTTCTACCAGTAGCACAGGCTATTTGCAGTTAGGTGCTGATG  1860
 456    N  G  N  V  R  L  S  T  S  S  T  G  Y  L  Q  L  G  A  D  A   475

1861  CAATGACCCCAGATAGTACTGGTACATACGCATTAGGTTCCGCCAGTCGAGCATGGTCTG  1920
 476    M  T  P  D  S  T  G  T  Y  A  L  G  S  A  S  R  A  W  S  G   495

1921  GCGGTTTTACTCAAGCAGCATTCACTGTTACCTCAGATGCTCGGTGTAAAACAGAACCTC  1980
 496    G  F  T  Q  A  A  F  T  V  T  S  D  A  R  C  K  T  E  P  L   515

1981  TTACTATCTCAGATGCCTTACTGGATGCTTGGTCTGAAGTTGACTTTGTGCAGTTTCAGT  2040
 516    T  I  S  D  A  L  L  D  A  W  S  E  V  D  F  V  Q  F  Q  Y   535

2041  ATTTGGATCGTGTTGAGGAGAAGGGTGCAGACTCAGCTAGATGGCACTTCGGTATCATCG  2100
 536    L  D  R  V  E  E  K  G  A  D  S  A  R  W  H  F  G  I  I  A   555

2101  CTCAGCGAGCTAAGGGAGGCTTTCGGAACGTCACGGGTATAGATGCACATCGCTATGCCT  2160
 556    Q  R  A  K  G  G  F  R  N  V  T  G  I  D  A  H  R  Y  A  F   575

2161  TCTTTGTGCTTCGACAAGTTGGGATGATGTATACCGAGGAAGATGCCAATGGCTCTCGTA  2220
 576    F  V  L  R  Q  V  G  M  M  Y  T  E  E  D  A  N  G  S  R  K   595

2221  AACTGATTACACCAGCAGGTTCCCGCTACGGTATTCGTTACGAGGAAGTACTGATATTAG  2280
 596    L  I  T  P  A  G  S  R  Y  G  I  R  Y  E  E  V  L  I  L  E   615

2281  AGGCTGCGTTGATGCGGAGGACTATTAAGCGTATGCAGGAAGCACTAGCTGCCCTTCCTA  2340
 616    A  A  L  M  R  R  T  I  K  R  M  Q  E  A  L  A  A  L  P  K   635

2341  AGTAAGCAACAGGCAGTGCGTAAGCACTGCTTTTCACGCAACTTTTCTTAAAGGTTATCA  2400
 636    *
```

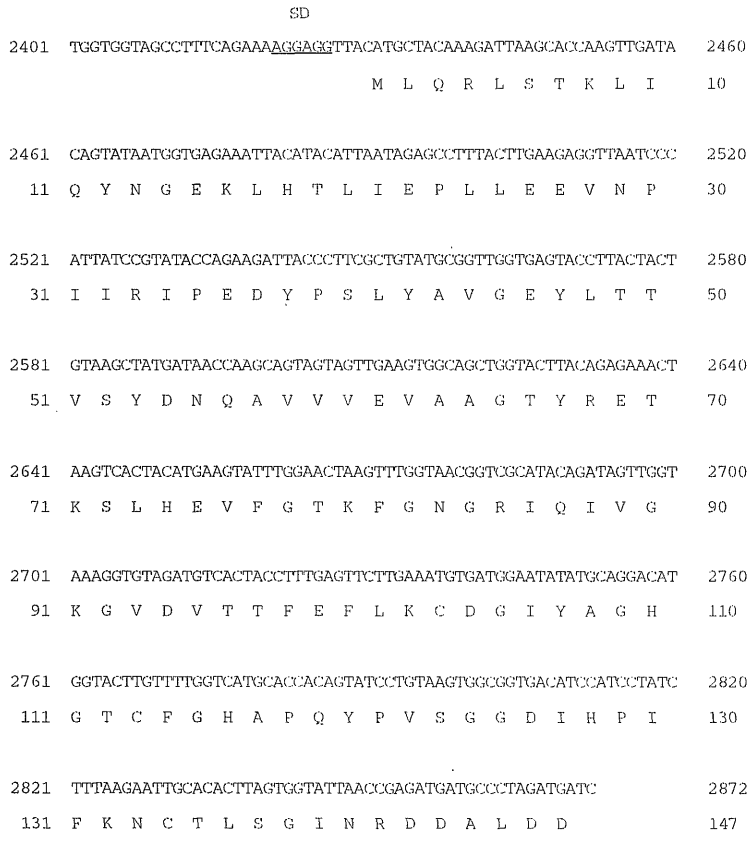


Figure 4.2. Nucleotide sequence and deduced amino acid sequence of bacteriophage K5 lyase coding region. An SP6-like promoter region and putative Shine-Dalgarno sites (SD) are underlined. The guanine (G) residue at which transcription initiates in the SP6 promoter (Melton *et al .*, 1984 is shown in bold. Nucleotide and amino acid positions are given on either side of the sequence. The K5 lyase nucleotide sequence data have been deposited in the EMBL nucleotide sequence databases under Accession Number Y10025.

Figure 4.3. Nucleotide homology between the K5 lyase sequence and the K1E endosialidase (K1LYASE) sequence, published by Long *et al* . (1995). Positions (bp) in each sequence are shown on the right.


K1ENDON MIQRLGSSLVKFKSKIAGAIWRNLDDKLTEVVSLKDFGAKGDGKTNDQDAVNRAIGSGKR
K1LYASE MIQRLGSSLVKFKSKIAGAIWRNLDDKLTEVVSLKDFGAKGDGKTNDQDAVNAAMASGKR
K5LYASE -MAKLTKPKTEGILHQGQSLYEYLDAR---VLTSKSFGAAGDATTDDTEVIAASLNSQKA
IDGAGATYKVSSLPDMERFYNTR--FVWERLAGQPLYYVSKGFINGELYKITDNPYYNAW
IDGAGATYKVSSLPDMERFYNTR--FVWERLAGQPLYYVSKGFINGELYKITDNPYYNAW
VTISDGVFSSSGINSNYCNLDGRGSGVLSHRSSTGNYLVFN---NPRTVALSNIAVESNK
PQDKAFVYENVIYAPYMGSDRHGVSRLHVSWVKSGDDGQTWSTPEWLTDMHPDYPTVNYH
PQDKAFVYENVIYAPYMGSDRHGVSRLHVSWVKSGDDGQTWSTPEWLTDMHPDYPTVNYH
PTDSTQGQQVSLAG---GSD-VTVSDVNFSNVK----GTGFSLIAYPNDAPPDG------
CMSMGVCRNRLFAMIETRTLAKNELTNCALWDRPMSRSLHLTGGITKAANQRYATIHVPD
CMSMGVCRNRLFAMIETRTLAKNELTNCALWDRPMSRSLHLTGGITKAANQRYATIHVPD
LMIKGIRG-------SYSGYATNKAAGCVLADS----------SVNSLI
HGLFVGDFVNFSNSAVTGVSGDMKVATVIDKDNFTVLTPNQQTSDLNNAGKNWHMGTSFH
HGLFVGDFVNFSNSAVTGVSGDMKVATVIDKDNFTVLTPNQQTSDLNNAGKNWHMGTSFH
DNVIAKNYPQFGAVELKGTASYQHSQLMLIGQIASMLLTN---------G----------
KSPWRKTDLGLIPRVTEVHSFATIDNNGFVMGYHQGDVAPREVGLFYFPDAFNSPSNYVR
KSPWRKTDLGLIPRVTEVHSFATIDNNGFVMGYHQGDVAPREVGLFYFPDAFNSPSNYVR
------TEGAIAP--SNNLIKGVMANN----PKYAAVVAGKGS-TNLISDVLVDYSTSDA
RQIPSEYEPDAAEPCIKYYDGVLYLITRGTRGDRLGSSLHRSRDIGQTWESLRFPHNVHH
RQIPSEYEPDAAEPCIKYYDGVLYLITRGTRGDRLGSSLHRSRDIGQTWESLRFPHNVHH
RQAHGVTE----EGSDNVINNVLMSGCDGTN------SLGQ-R---QTATIARFIGTANN
TTLPFAKVGDDLIMFGSERAENEWEAGAPDDRYKASYPRTFYARLNVNNWNADDIEWVNI
TTLPFAKVGDDLIMFGSERAENEWEAGAPDDRYKASYPRTFYARLNVNNWNADDIEWVNI
N---YASVFPSYSATG----VITFESGSTRNFVEVKHP----GRR--N------------
TDQIYQGDIVNSSVGVGSVVVKDSFIYYIFGGENHFNPMTYGDNRDKDPFKGHGHPTDIY
TDQIYQGDIVNSSVGVGSVVVKDSFIYYIFGGENHFNPMTYGDNKDKDPFKGHGHPTDIY
-DLLSSASTIDGAATIGGTSNSNVVHAPALG--QYIGSMSG---RFEWRIKSMSLPSGVL

```
K1ENDON         SYKMQIANDNRVSRKFTYGATPGQAIPTFMGTDGIRNIPAPLYFSDNIVTEDTKVGHLTL
K1LYASE         CYKMQIANDNRVSRKFTYGATPGQAIPTFMGTDGIRNIPAPLYFSDNIVTEDTKVGHLTL
K5LYASE         TSADKYRMLGDGAVSLAVGGGTSSQVRLFTSDGTSR----------------------TV
                .   .    .  .  . *      . *     *                       *.

K1ENDON         KASTSANIRSEMQMEGEYGFIGKSVPKDKPTGQRLIICGGEGTSSSSGAQITLHGSNSSN
K1LYASE         KASTSANIRSEMQMEGEYGFIGKSVPKDKPTGQRLIICGGEGTSSSSGAQITLHGSNSSN
K5LYASE         SLTN-GNVRLSTSSTGYLQLGADAMTPDS----------TGTYALGSASRAWSGGFTQA
                  ..  *.*      *       ..  *            ** .   *  .  *  .

K1ENDON         AKRITYNGNEHLFQGAPIMPAVDNQFAAGGPSNRFTTIYLGSDPVTTSDADHKYGISSIN
K1LYASE         AKRITYNGNEHLFQGAPIMPAVDNQFAAGGPSNRFTTIYLGSDPVTTSDADHKYGISSIN
K5LYASE         APTVTSDAR----CKTEPLTISDALLDAWSEVDFVQFQYL--DRVEEKGADSARWHFGII
                *  .*          .  .   *    *          **  * *    **       *

K1ENDON         TKVLKAWSRVGFKQYGLNSEAERNLDSIHFGVLAQDIVAAFEAEGLDAIKYGIVSFEEGR
K1LYASE         TKVLKAWSRVGFKQYGLNSEAERNLDSIHFGVLAQDIVAAFEAEGLDAIKYGIVSFEEGR
K5LYASE         AQRAKGGFRN----------VTGIDAHRYAFFVLRQVGMMYTEEDANGSRKLITPAGSR
                ..  *   *  ,           ..*. ..      *    .*        ...    *

K1ENDON         YGVRYSEVLILEAAYTRHRLDKLEEMYATNKIS
K1LYASE         YGVRYSEVLILEAAYTRHRLDKLEEMYATNKIS
K5LYASE         YGIRYEEVLILEAALMRRTIKRMQEALAALPK-
                **.** ********  *. . ...*  *.
```

Figure 4.4. Amino acid sequence comparison of the K5 lyase, the K1E endosialidase (K1LYASE above) and the PK1E Endo NE protein (K1ENDON above). Alignment of the amino acid sequences using CLUSTER W (1.5).Gaps introduced in the alignment by computer are shown with hyphens. The asterisks and dots represent identical and similar amino acid residues respectively.

Figure 4.5. Amino acid sequence comparison of the K5 lyase and Sequence 2 (SEQ2) from patent US 5480800 (Legoux *et al .*, unpublished). Alignment of the amino acid sequence using CLUSTER W (1.5). Gaps introduced in the alignment by the computer are shown in hyphens. The asterisks and dots represent identical and similar amino acid residues respectively.

4.2.5 T7 Expression of Proteins Encoded by the Lyase Clone

The potential ORFs in clone pB4 translated in opposite orientation to the *tac* promoter in the expression vector pTTQ18 and the encoded proteins could not be overexpressed from the native promoter located upstream of the two ORFs. The entire 2.8 kb insert DNA was then excised from clone pB4 in a *Sma* I-*Xba* I fragment, which was then ligated to an *Xba* I-*Hinc* II linearised pGEM-3Zf$^+$ to generate plasmid pFE50 (Figure 4.6), thus placing the cloned genes 3' to the T7 promoter. *E. coli* JM109DE3 strain carrying either pFE50 or pGEM3Zf$^+$ were induced with 1mM IPTG for protein expression (see section 2.7) and proteins were separated by SDS-PAGE. A coomassie blue stained gel of the total protein lysate from *E. coli* JM109[DE3]pFE50 did not reveal any overexpressed protein band. The encoded proteins were then radiolabelled with [^{35}S] methionine, before separation on an SDS-PAGE. This revealed an over-expressed polypeptide migrating at approximately 62 kDa in SDS-PAGE (Figure 4.7). This polypeptide band was found more intense in the IPTG induced *E. coli* JM109DE3pFE50 cells (Figure 4.7, lane 4), when compared with the uninduced *E. coli* JM109DE3pFE50 cells (Figure 4.7, lane 3). A vector band running at approximately 62 kDa was observed in the induced *E. coli* JM109DE3pGEM-3Zf$^+$ (Figure 4.7, lane 2), although not of the same intensity as the over-expressed ORF 635 product.

4.2.6 Induced Expression of Lyase Activity

To determine the activity of the lyase enzyme, *E. coli* JM101 carrying plasmid pB4 and its derivatives (pB4Δ*Pst* I and pFE50) (Figure 4.6) were grown to mid logarithmic phase (OD_{600} of 0.6) and then induced with 1mM IPTG for 2 hrs. Cells were resuspended in 5 ml of sonication buffer and sonicated to obtain a lysate. This lysate (5µl for pFE50 and 30µl for pB4/pB4Δ*Pst* I) was incubated with 20µl of 25mgml^{-1} K5 polysaccharide extract at 37^{o}C for 10 mins (pFE50) and for overnight in the case of pB4 and pB4Δ*Pst* I. Five microlitre (5X10^{6}pfu) of the K5 bacteriophage lysate was similarly incubated as control. Samples were separated by polyacryamide gel electrophoresis to visualise cleavage of the polysaccharide substrate (Figure 4.8). Polysaccharide cleavage was observed after 10 mins incubation with enzyme lysate obtained from pFE50, 1 hr with the K5 phage and overnight with the pB4 lysate. A slight substrate cleavage was observed

after overnight incubation with the pB4Δ*Pst* I lysate (Figure 4.8, lane 6). Plasmid pB4Δ*Pst* I was constructed by re-ligating a *Pst* I linearised pB4 clone. A *Pst* I digest of clone pB4 resulted in the deletion of the first 545 bp sequences in the cloned bacteriophage K5 lyase DNA fragment, which included the first 36 amino acid residues of the encoded lyase protein. This deleted segment of the K5 lyase sequence also contains the putative SP6-like promoter region.

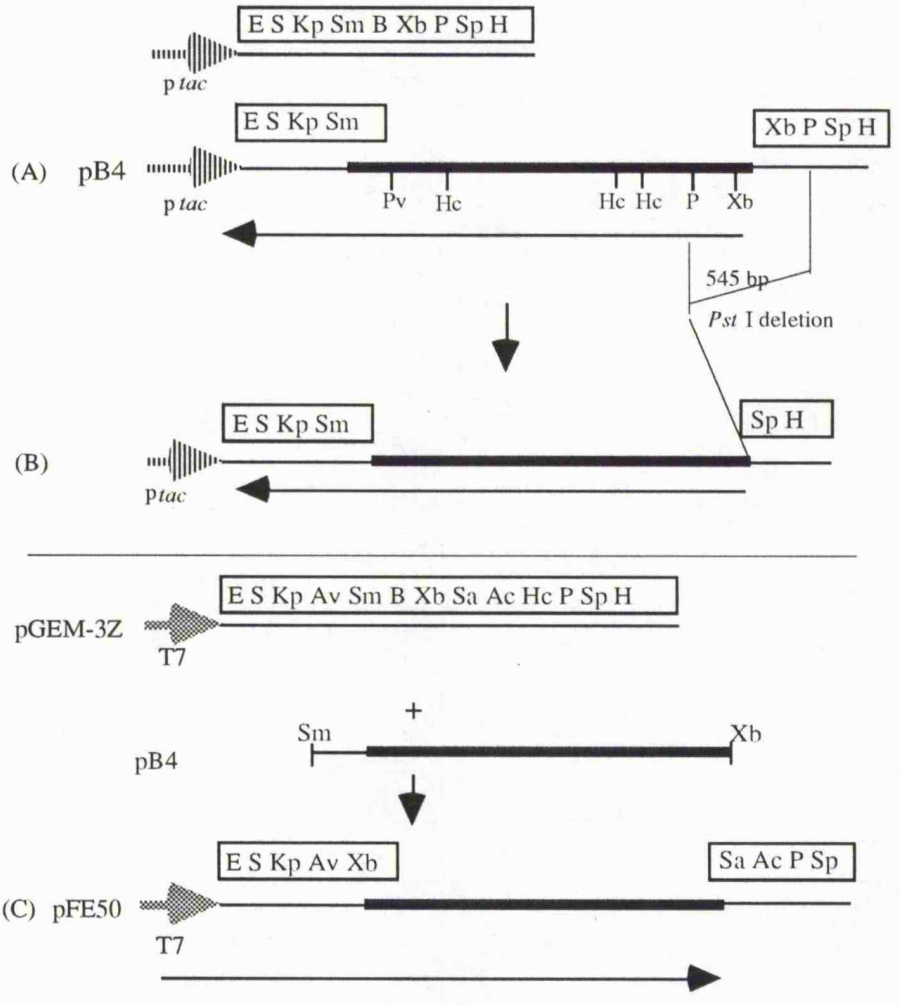


Figure 4.6. Physical map of cloned DNA fragment in clone pB4 (A) and its derivatives, pB4Δ*Pst* I (B) and pFE50 (C). The polycloning sites in the vector are shown in boxes. The thick and thin horizontal lines represent cloned DNA and vector DNA fragments respectively. Thin line arrows indicate the direction cloned genes are transcribed. The position of T7 and *tac* promoters are shown with shaded arrows. Enzyme abbreviations: Av; *Ava* I, Ac; *Acc* I, B; *Bam* HI, E; *Eco*RI, H; *Hind* III, Hc; *Hinc* II, Kp; *Kpn* I, P; *Pst* I, Pv; *Pvu* II, S; *Sal* I, Sa; *Sac* I, Sm; *Sma* I, Sp; *Sph* I, Xb; *Xba* I.

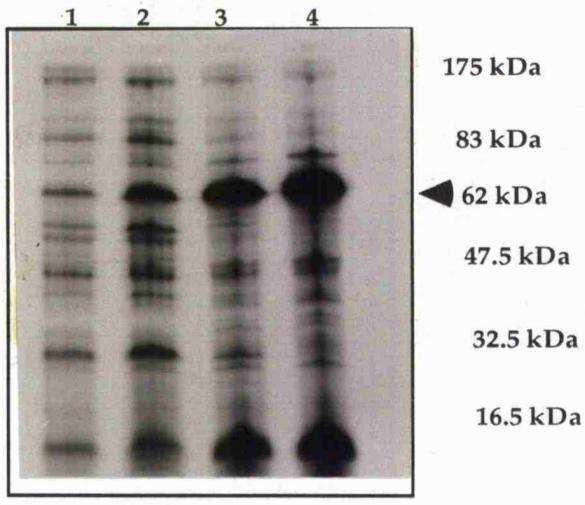


Figure 4.7. Autoradiograph of [^{35}S] methionine labelled polypeptides analysed by SDS-PAGE. Lane order: 1; *E. coli* JM109DE3 induced, 2; JM109DE3pGEM-3Zf^{+} induced, 3; JM109DE3pFE50 uninduced, 4; JM109DE3pFE50 induced.

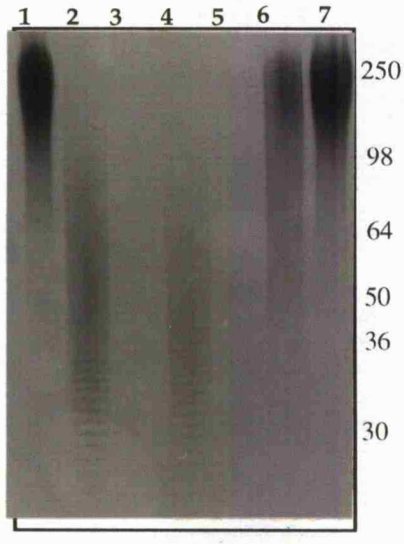


Figure 4.8. The K5 lyase activity gel. Lane order: 1/7; uncleaved capsular polysaccharide (PS), 2; pFE50 after 10 mins incubation with PS, 3; pFE50 after 1 hr, 4; K5 phage lysate after 1 hr, 5; pB4 after overnight incubation, 6; pB4Δ*Pst* I after overnight incubation. Sizes are in kDa.

4.3 Discussion

An isolated recombinant from the bacteriophage K5 DNA gene library has been shown to express K5 capsule-specific lyase activity. The isolated recombinant clone pB4 contains a bacteriophage K5 insert DNA of approximately 2.8 kb. The DNA sequence of clone pB4 was found to be 2872 bp in length and nucleotide sequence searches of the database revealed significant DNA homology (83.0%) over the first 571 bp of the K5 lyase sequence and the DNA sequence of the bacteriophage K1E endosialidase described by Long *et al* . (1995). This homologous region extends from the non-coding region to the first 43 amino acid residues encoded in the putative 66.9 kDa protein of K5 lyase and a potential open reading frame capable of encoding a 12 kDa protein found upstream of the K1E endosialidase protein (Figure 4.9A). Identified within the non-coding homologous region in both the K5 lyase and the K1E endosialidase sequences is a putative promoter region that shares 75% identity with the bacteriophage SP6 promoter described by Melton *et al* . (1984) and Long *et al* . (1995). This DNA homology between the K5 lyase and the K1E endosialidase sequences will suggest that the enzyme-bearing coliphages may be similar. Comparison of nucleotide sequence of this region of the K5 lyase and the sequence 5' to the encoded PK1E Endo NE protein (Gerardy-Schahn *et al* ., 1995) did not reveal any nucleotide sequence identity. Whereas, a putative 12 kDa protein (found upstream of the encoded K1E endosialidase protein) is not present in the K5 lyase sequence, comparison of the predicted amino acid sequences of the encoded K5 lyase protein and the 12 kDa protein shows that they share 41.3% identity over the first 46 amino acid (Figure 4.9B). This observation suggests that the K5 lyase protein may have fused with the N-terminus of the 12 kDa protein, thus further lending support to the earlier view that the K5 and the K1E coliphages are related.

Analysis of the open reading frames (ORFs) has identified two ORFs, one of which exceeded the range of the clone DNA fragment. The first and complete ORF (ORF 635) is immediately downstream of the promoter region and encodes a putative 66.9 kDa protein with 635 amino acid residues. Database searches with ORF 635 sequence revealed very high

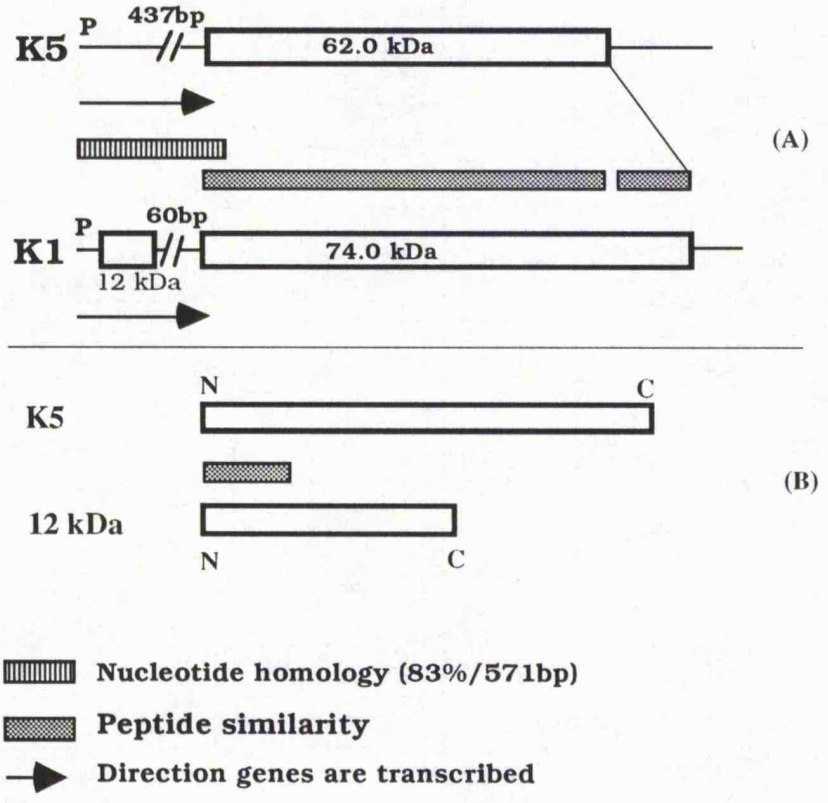


Figure 4.9. Sequence comparison of the bacteriophage K5 lyase **(K5)** and the K1E endosialidase **(K1)**. The translated regions of the sequence are shown as unfilled boxes and the non-coding regions as single horizontal lines. Shaded boxes represent regions of homology between the two sequences. The identified promoter region is shown (P). The N and C denote N- and C-termini respectively.

amino acid similarity (89.0%) with a protein of 820 amino acid residues deposited under a US patent as sequence 2 (pat | US | 5480800). The putative 66.9 kDa protein encoded by ORF 635 is also homologous (50.8% similarity) to bacteriophage K1E endosialidase protein described by Long *et al* . (1995) and the bacteriophage K1 endoneuraminidase protein (Gerardy-Schahn *et al* ., 1995). The amino acid sequence of the K5 lyase protein and the two K1E encoded proteins show a high degree of identity within the last 33 C-terminal residues (see figure 4.4). The last 32 C-terminal amino acid residues have been implicated in bacteriophage PK1-endoneuraminidase (Endo NE) activity (Gerardy-Schahn *et al* ., 1995) and it is likely that this region will equally be essential for the enzymatic activity of the bacteriophage K5-encoded lyase enzyme. Sequence 2 from patent US 5480800 encodes an enzyme that fragments n-acetylheparosan (Legoux *et al*., unpublished) and this substrate is essentially identical to the K5 capsular polysaccharide (Vann *et al* ., 1981). Although not yet demonstrated, it is possible that K5 capsular polysaccharide, heparin and heparin-like compounds including n-acetylheparosan can be substrates for both the K5 lyase and the enzyme encoded by Sequence 2. In such a scenario, the K5 lyase enzyme may be functionally important in fragmenting heparin and its precursor molecules to yield substances that could be of biotechnological value. The chemical modifications of the K5 capsular polysaccharide to yield products with antithrombin activity has been reported (Casu *et al* ., 1994). In addition, the K5 lyase enzyme has been characterised and shown to randomly cleave the K5 polysaccharide, yielding oligosaccharide products that are mainly hexa-, octa-, and decasaccharides with unsaturated 4,5-glucuronic acids at their nonreducing ends (Hänfling *et al* ., 1996). The oligosaccharide products of the K5 lyase action could therefore serve as acceptors in the study of polymerisation of the K5 polysaccharide, especially the enzyme involved in the initiation of such process. Searches with the deduced amino acid sequence of the second and incomplete ORF did not reveal any significant identity to sequences in the database, and it is assumed not to be required for the function of the encoded K5 lyase enzyme.

Expression of the K5 lyase protein in *E. coli* revealed a protein migrating at approximately 62 kDa in SDS-PAGE, which differs from the predicted molecular mass of 66.9 kDa. Such discrepancy in the apparent molecular weight in SDS-PAGE and the predicted molecular weight has been observed with the Endo NE protein which has a predicted molecular mass

of 90.6 kDa, but migrates at ~74 kDa in SDS-PAGE (Gerardy-Schahn *et al* ., 1995). Although the discrepancy in molecular weight observed with the Endo NE protein has been attributed to post translational processing (Gerardy-Schahn *et al* ., 1995), this is not likely to be the case with the encoded K5 protein as no peptidase processing site is present within the protein. A likely explanation to the discrepancy in molecular weight observed with the K5 lyase protein can be due to a translational start located downstream from that proposed in figure 4.2. Though, such potential translational start that will result in a protein of 62 kDa was not seen, it will be necessary to establish the N-terminal amino acid composition of the K5 lyase protein through N-terminal sequencing, to ascertain the translational start site.

In vitro determination of lyase activity from the plasmid encoded enzyme showed that the lyase was successfully over-expressed using the T7 promoter, with K5 capsular polysaccharide cleavage within 10 mins. The enzyme encoded in clone pB4 translated in the opposite orientation to the *tac* promoter in plasmid vector pTTQ18 and needed over 8 hrs to cleave the polysaccharide substrate. The reduced activity observed for clone pB4 could be attributed to low level of protein expression from the native SP6-like promoter located upstream of the K5 lyase open reading frame. A slight substrate degradation was observed with the enzyme expressed from plasmid pB4Δ*Pst* I which lacks the native promoter region, including the first 36 amino acid residues of the encoded lyase protein and with the *tac* promoter in the opposite orientation to the translated protein (see figure 4.6). This observed activity could have resulted from a read-through expression from unknown promoter sequence(s) in the vector. In addition, the reduction in activity observed with clone pB4Δ*Pst* I could have resulted from the deletion of the native promoter sequences and the first 36 amino acid residues of the K5 lyase protein. One way to establish the effect of this deletion will be to clone the K5 lyase DNA fragments in plasmids pB4 and pB4Δ*Pst* I 3' to the *tac* promoter in pTTQ18 and then to determine the enzyme activity obtained from these plasmid derivatives.

Chapter 5

Discussion

The expression of group II capsular polysaccharide in *E. coli* is believed to be determined by a membrane-bound hetero-oligomeric biosynthetic/ translocation complex (Roberts, 1995, 1996; Bliss and Silver, 1996). A general picture emerging from the processes involved in this complex is viewed to proceed in three stages of biosynthesis, translocation across the inner membrane and the cell surface expression. It should be noted that this categorisation is only for the sake of convenience, as biosynthesis and translocation appear to be in a concurrent process with no intermediate(s). From studies of the *E. coli* K5 and K1 capsule gene clusters, it has been established that biosynthesis of group II capsular polysaccharides is achieved through a series of reactions mediated by region 2 encoded proteins. Translocation of polysaccharide to the cell surface is mediated by proteins encoded by regions 1 and 3. The region 3 encoded proteins, KpsM and KpsT are members of the ATP-binding cassette (ABC) superfamily, involved in the export of capsular polysaccharide across the cytoplasmic membrane (Smith *et al .*, 1990; Pavelka *et al .*, 1991; Pigeon and Silver, 1994). After the KpsMT-mediated transport across the cytoplasmic membrane, the final stage involves the export across the periplasmic space to the cell surface. This stage in the export of capsular polysaccharide is the least-characterised. Mutational analysis of region 1 genes have provided some insights into the encoded proteins that may be involved. Mutations in *kpsE* and *kpsD* abolished capsule expression on the cell surface (Bronner *et al .*, 1993a). In addition, the localisation of both KpsD and KpsE suggests a role in the final stage of polysaccharide export. The KpsD is a periplasmic protein that is secreted via the classical *sec* -dependent pathway, and its cleavable leader sequence has been established (Wunder *et al .*, 1994). Our earlier data has shown that the KpsE protein is localised in the inner membrane (Rosenow *et al .*, 1995). KpsE is homologous to BexC and CtrB proteins from the capsule gene clusters of *H. influenzae* and *N. meningitidis* respectively , and on the basis of their likely function and localisation they have been suggested to form a component of the ABC-mediated transport of capsular polysaccharide in these bacteria (Reizer *et al .*, 1992). Thus, the membrane organisation of the KpsE protein

was investigated to ascertain its possible export role in this model for the cell surface expression of group II capsular polysaccharide.

A topological model consisting of two transmembrane domains with the N- and C-termini located in the cytoplasm was proposed for the KpsE, based on the hydropathic profile of the predicted amino acid sequence and by using the von Heijne's 'positive inside rule'. The predicted transmembrane domains (Rost *et al* ., 1994) and those proposed in the topological model for the KpsE were in agreement. The proposed membrane topology was investigated using both Tn*phoA* mutagenesis and β-lactamase gene fusion approach. Tn*phoA* mutagenesis generated only two PhoA$^+$ fusions at residues 54 and 56 within the KpsE protein. The PhoA fusions within the KpsE represented a low isolation frequency (2 out of 15 insertions within the KpsE in a total of 128 plasmid insertion mutants analysed). This low frequency of isolation can be attributed to the inefficient random mutagenesis approach in defining protein topology, as KpsE will only constitute a small target area relative to other genes within the recipient in the mating experiment. Secondly, it could be due to some hot-spot for Tn*phoA* within the recipient chromosome or to some yet unknown intrinsic properties of the *kpsE* gene, as previous attempt by Cieslewicz *et al* . (1993) to generate Tn*phoA* fusions within the *kpsE* gene proved unsuccessful. Further β-lactamase (*blaM*) gene fusion analysis provided additional insight into the membrane organisation of the KpsE protein. A BlaM fusion at amino acid position 24 of the KpsE gave a low level of ampicillin resistance (Amp^r), suggestive of the cytoplasmic location of this position of the KpsE. The periplasmic locations of residues 51, 211 and 345 were indicated by the high levels of Amp^r conferred by BlaM fusions at these positions and by the isolation of PhoA$^+$ insertions at residues 54 and 56. BlaM fusion at position 381 gave a high Amp^r value compared to the fusion at the cytoplasmic position 24, which suggests that the C-terminus of the KpsE protein is not located in the cytoplasm. Confirming this view is the proteolysis of BlaM fused to position 381, and the lack of net positive charge at the C-terminus is in keeping with this finding. Whilst, it is certain that the C-terminus of the KpsE is not inserted into the cytoplasm thus confirming the absence of a second transmembrane domain, the exact localisation with regards to the inner or outer membrane remains uncertain. It was not possible to draw a topological conclusion from the Amp^r values of BlaM fused to residues 361 (10μgml^{-1}) and 381 (15μgml^{-1}) which represent two most C-terminal

fusions to the KpsE protein. Hence, with the C-terminus not located within the cytoplasm, the KpsE can adopt two possible membrane topology (Figure 5.1) in which the C-terminus may be associated either with the inner or outer membrane (Figure 5.1, panels A and B respectively). The "coiled coil" conformation of the large periplasmic segment as suggested from the solvent accessibility prediction using the neural network profile of Rost *et al* . (1994), indicates that this segment of the KpsE may not loop back into the inner membrane after spanning the periplasmic space. This therefore favours a membrane topology in which the C-terminus is associated with the outer membrane (Panel B, figure 5.1).

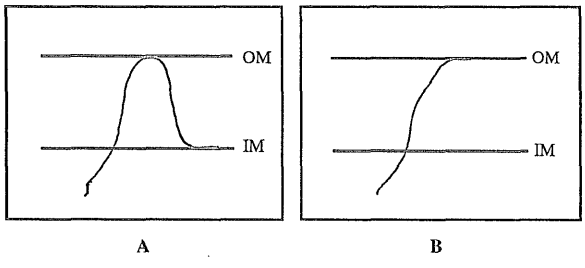


Figure 5.1. Membrane topology of the KpsE protein, showing the association of the C-terminus either with the inner membrane (A) or with the outer membrane (B). The inner (IM) and outer (OM) membranes are indicated.

One way of confirming the C-terminal location of the KpsE protein will be through carboxyl peptidase and mapping. In addition, epitope tagging has been used to study the topology of outer membrane proteins (Newton *et al.*, 1996). This approach is particularly useful in providing topological information on the external or periplasmic locations of segments of protein under study. Thus, in the case of the KpsE protein the C-terminus association with the outer rather than the inner membrane can only be confirmed using epitope tagging when such fusion to the KpsE C-terminus is exposed to the cell surface, which can then be detected through cytofluorometric (FACS) analysis with the whole cell. Also, the deletion of

the transmembrane segment may result in the KpsE being anchored to the outer membrane which can then be probed for the presence of KpsE protein or an epitope tagged to its C-terminus.

The membrane organisation of KpsE, with an N-terminal transmembrane domain followed by a large periplasmic domain and a C-terminus that may be associated with the outer membrane is identical to the topology adopted by the CvaA (Skvirsky *et al* ., 1995), a protein that belongs to the membrane fusion protein (MFP) family. Similar membrane topology was established for LcnD, a protein implicated in the transport of bacteriocins from *Lactococcus lactis* and this protein was proposed as the MFP homologue in the transport process (Frank *et al* ., 1996). Although analysis of the predicted amino acid sequences between the KpsE and some members of the MFP family has revealed identities (17.5 - 20.7%) which are within the "twilight zone" of 15-25% identity described by Doolittle (1986), the membrane topology of the KpsE with a large periplasmic domain and a C-terminus that may be associated with the outer membrane is consistent with the proposed function of the MFPs (Fath and Kolter, 1993; Dinh *et al* ., 1994). This observation is in line with the view of related proteins with similar function that have diverge over the years (Doolittle, 1986). Consistent with this view is the finding that ABC exporters of unrelated polypeptides show poor sequence identity (Delepelaire and Wandersman, 1990) and the observation of the polysaccharide exporters (KpsE, BexC, and CtrB) clustering to one side in the phylogenetic tree analysis of these proteins and some members of the MFPs.

Thus, in the model for the cell surface expression of group II capsular polysaccharide, the KpsE protein is proposed as the MFP component (on the basis of structural similarity) in the KpsMT-mediated export. In this role, the KpsE may interact with the KpsD protein to effectively export capsular polysaccharide unto the cell surface. Though the function of KpsD remains enigmatic with no known homologues even in the very similar polysaccharide export systems like *bex* and *ctr* which have dedicated outer membrane components, the KpsD protein has been proposed to function in the "recruitment" of a porin (protein K) to the transport machinery complex (Bliss and Silver, 1996). This porin was then suggested to complete the assembly of capsular polysaccharide on the cell surface (Bliss and Silver, 1996). Alternatively, the finding that the predicted amino acid sequence of KpsD shares a 20.1% identity with the TolC protein, an outer

membrane component in haemolysin secretion (Figure 5.2) suggests that KpsD may function in a role analogous to outer membrane proteins. In addition, the predicted amino acid sequences of the KpsD and the GumB protein of *Xanthomonas campestris* is 25.3% identical over 170 amino acid residues. The GumB protein has been implicated in the expression of xanthan gum polysaccharide in this bacterium (Harding *et al* ., 1987). Therefore, in line with the proposed function of the MFPs it is possible that both KpsE and KpsD may interact to effectively allow fusion of the outer and inner membranes or the formation of an oligomeric pore, that will enable the passage of polysaccharide directly to the cell surface. In keeping with this view is the observation that cell surface expression of capsular polysaccharide may be achieved through sites (Bayer junctions) where the inner and outer membranes come in close aperture (Bayer and Thurow, 1977). Whereas the existence of such adhesion zones between the inner and outer membrane has been disputed (Kellenberger, 1990), their involvement in the expression of capsular polysaccharide have been suggested by electron microscopy (Bayer, 1990; Krönke *et al* ., 1990b). The model (Figure 5.3) for the expression of capsular polysaccharide in *E. coli* K5 serotype therefore, involves the biosynthesis of the K5 polymer at the inner face of the cytoplasmic membrane by proteins encoded by region 2 genes (Petit *et al* ., 1995; Roberts, 1995, 1996). The lipid-linked and KDO substituted polysaccharide is then translocated across the inner membrane by the ABC exporters, KpsM and KpsT proteins encoded by region 3 genes (Smith *et al.*, 1990) and the cell surface assembly of the capsular polysaccharide determined by the KpsE and KpsD proteins (Figure 5.3).

In the light of existing knowledge on the mechanism involved in the cell surface expression of group II capsular polysaccharides, it is possible that the KpsE, KpsD, KpsM and KpsT may form a hetero-oligomeric complex involved in the export of capsular polysaccharide in *E. coli* . However, it is not known whether the KpsE interacts physically with the KpsM and T or directly with the polysaccharide on crossing the cytoplasmic membrane. Thus, further work will be to understand the KpsE function and interaction with other *kps* encoded proteins. This will require some protein-protein interaction analysis, through cross-linking and immuno-

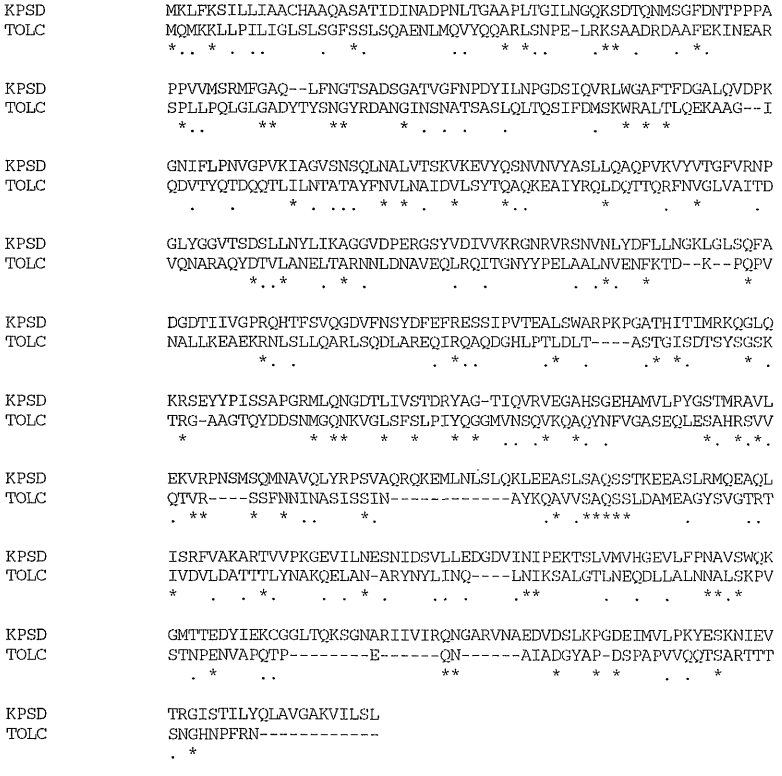


Figure 5.2. Amino acid sequence comparison of the KpsD and the TolC proteins. Alignment of the amino acid sequences using CLUSTER W (1.5). Gaps introduced by the computer are shown with hyphens. The asterisks and dots denotes identical and similar amino acid residues respectively.

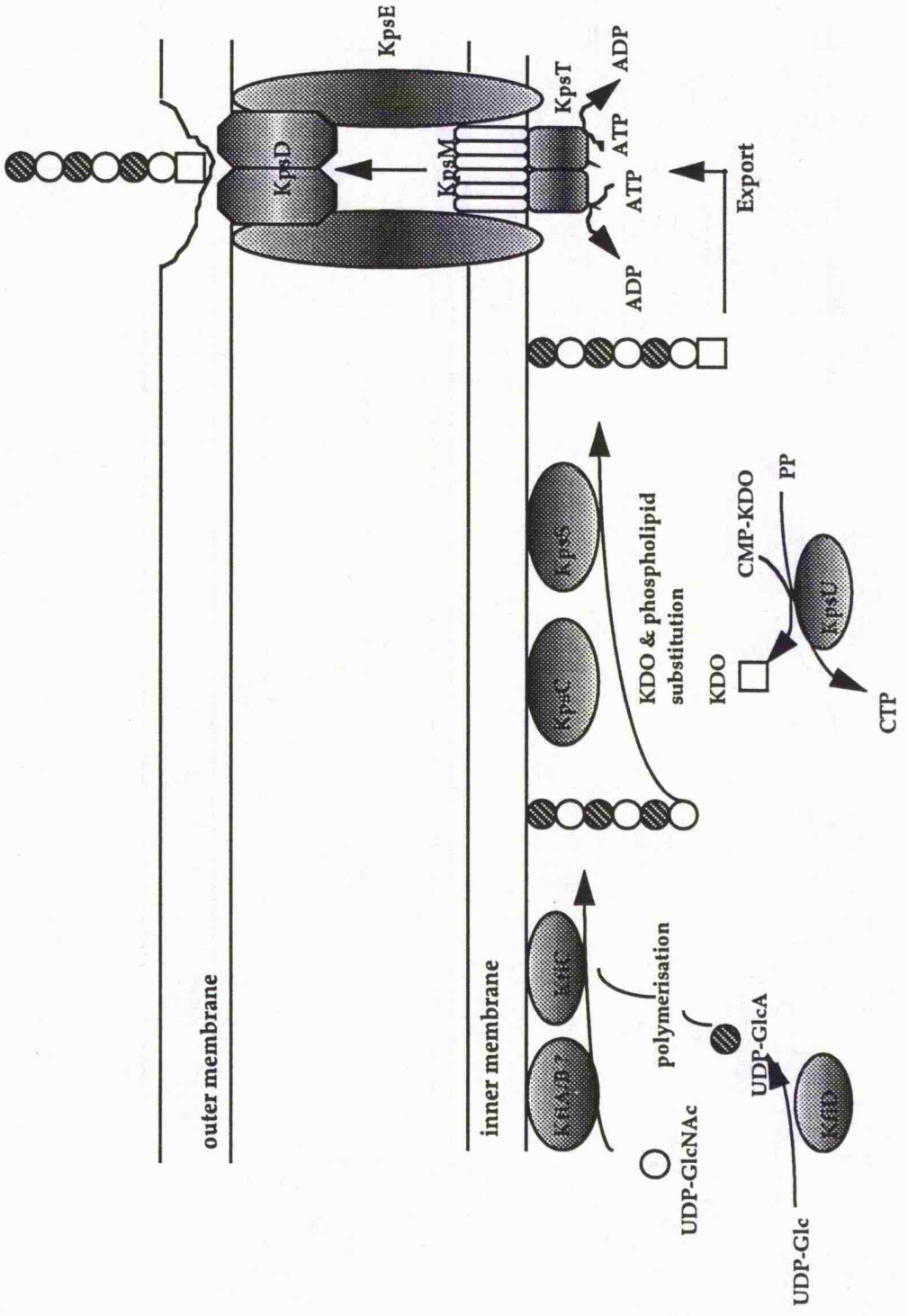


Figure 5.3. The schematic diagram showing the biosynthesis and export of polysaccharide in *E. coli* K5. The proteins believed to be involved in each process are represented.

precipitation studies. Such cross-linking studies can be achieved through the use of several cross-linking agents like glutaraldehyde treatment of whole cells, dimethylsuberimate (DMS) and acylazides treatments of proteins under study, followed by two dimensional SDS-PAGE analysis. Likewise, evidence of protein interaction can be obtained through immunoprecipitation of a cross-linked protein product in the presence or absence of a cross-linking reagent, using monoclonal antibody to one of the proteins under study. In addition, site-directed mutagenesis especially within the periplasmic domain may reveal conserved residues that may be necessary for the KpsE function. Furthermore, complementation studies between the KpsE and the MFPs may confirm the functional conservation of these proteins in the ABC transport system. Also, since there are no KpsD homologues in the *bex* and *ctr* capsule gene clusters of *H. influenzae* and *N. meningitidis* respectively, it will be interesting to see if *kpsE* mutation can be complemented by its homologues, BexC and CtrB proteins. In addition, it will be important to show if the BexC or CtrB proteins can function in a *kpsE/D* double mutant. These complementation studies will provide an insight as to whether the KpsD functions in a role analogous to outer membrane proteins, which are involved in the export process in the *bex* and *ctr* systems.

The cell surface expression of capsular polysaccharide was abolished by an inframe deletion of 65 amino acid residues of the KpsE protein encoded within the *kps* gene locus. The *kpsE* mutant can be complemented by a functional *kpsE* gene. The complementation of this mutant using the plasmid construct, pPC6 which encodes the *kps* genes excluding the *kpsF* (see table 2.2) resulted in turbid plaque morphology as oppose to clear 'normal' plaque morphology observed with clone pFE9 (see table 3.2). One interpretation of the result is that the mutated *kpsE* gene encodes a protein (KpsE*) which forms some form of dysfunctional complex disrupting the biosynthetic/export complex. This suggests that the *kpsE* mutant exerts a dominant negative effect on this complex. In support of this hypothesis is the finding that this dysfunctional complex can be titrated out using multiple copy of the *kpsE* gene (see section 3.2.4.2). This observation is consistent with the existence of a biosynthetic/export complex and points to an important role for the KpsE protein in this complex.

The polysaccharide lyases are finding increasing application in a number of biological processes, including the structural determination and analysis of glycosaminoglycans found in tissues and body fluids (Linhardt *et al* ., 1991, 1992) and the preparation of novel therapeutic agents (Jandik *et al* ., 1994). The isolation and characterisation at molecular level could therefore provide some useful information on this least characterised and important group of enzymes.

The isolation and sequencing of the bacteriophage K5 lyase gene has identified nucleotide sequence homology (83.0%) over the first 571 bp of the K5 lyase sequence to the nucleotide sequence of the bacteriophage K1E endosialidase described by Long *et al* . (1995). A promoter region that shares 75% identity with the bacteriophage SP6 promoter described by Melton *et al* . (1984) and Long *et al* . (1995) was identified within the non-coding homologous region. This nucleotide homology may reflect a common origin for these bacteriophage genes. Whilst, an open reading frame capable of encoding a 12 kDa protein was found between the promoter region and the encoded K1E endosialidase protein, no potential open reading frame was observed upstream of the encoded K5 lyase protein. However, comparison of the predicted amino acid sequence between the K5 lyase and the 12 kDa revealed a 41.3% identity over the first 46 amino acid residues of the two proteins. Although the 12 kDa has been postulated not to play a role in the K1E endosialidase activity, if the suggestion of a binding role for a 38 kDa protein that co-purifies with the Endo NE protein (Gerardy-Schahn *et al* ., 1995) is true for the 12 kDa protein, then it is likely that the N-terminus of the encoded K5 lyase protein may play a similar role in binding of the enzyme to the phage. A similar binding function for the N-terminus of a bacteriophage encoded Endo NF protein has been postulated (Petter and Vimr, 1993). The deduced amino acid sequences of the two bacteriophage K1 proteins (Endo NE and K1E endosialidase) and that of the K5 lyase protein are identical in the last C-terminal 32 residues. This region have been implicated in the Endo NE activity and was suggested to function in the stabilisation of the secondary or tertiary structures of the Endo NE (Gerardy-Schahn *et al* ., 1995). Likewise, this region in the K5 lyase protein may play a similar role and may therefore be required for the insertion of the enzyme into the phage head assembly. As a component of the phage tail structure, the K5 lyase specificity for K5 capsular polysaccharide defines host range interaction, which explains the low identity observed over the central region between

the predicted amino acid sequences of the K5 lyase and the K1E endosialidase. This view together with the nucleotide homology suggest that the K5 and the K1E phages may belong to the same family of DNA bacteriophages but with different capsule specificities.

Furthermore, database searches with the deduced amino acid sequence of the K5 lyase protein revealed high amino acid identity (54.0%) (89.4% similarity) to a protein of 820 amino acid residues deposited under a US patent as sequence 2 (pat|US|5480800). This homology does imply that these two proteins are not the same but are very similar. The 820 amino acid (sequence 2) protein functions in fragmenting n-acetylheparosan (Legoux *et al* ., unpublished), a substrate with similar structure to the K5 capsular polysaccharide. Therefore, the similarity between this enzyme and the K5 lyase suggest that the K5 lyase enzyme may be capable of utilising n-acetylheparosan as substrate.

The activity of the plasmid encoded K5 lyase enzyme has been demonstrated *in vitro* and shown to effectively cleave the K5 polysaccharide substrate. The specificity of the bacteriophage-borne K5 lyase on K5 capsular polysaccharide which is a polymer with similar structure to an intermediate of heparin biosynthesis could therefore prove to be a valuable tool for the study of the complex reactions involved in the biosynthesis of both heparin and K5 capsular polysaccharide. Hence, future studies on the K5 lyase will include the determination of substrate specificity against heparin or heparin-like compounds found in tissues and biological fluids and its applications.

In one of such likely applications, the gene encoding the K5 lyase can be introduced into the *kps* gene cluster where it can be induced in a controlled fermentation process to yield defined K5 oligosaccharides that can be processed into heparin-like substances with anti-thrombin activity as have been reported (Casu *et al* ., 1994) using chemically modified *E. coli* K5 polysaccharide. In addition, a specificity of the K5 lyase for heparin and heparin-like substances means that this enzyme can be employed for the removal of heparin from circulation, especially during extra-corporeal therapy (Langer *et al* ., 1982). Furthermore, enzymatically derived oligosaccharides could serve as sugar acceptors for transferase reactions involved in both heparin and K5 polysaccharide biosynthesis. Such GlcA and GlcNAc transfer reactions involved in heparin/heparan sulphate biosynthesis have been demonstrated using chemically derived

oligosaccharides from the *E. coli* K5 polysaccharide (Lind *et al* ., 1993). This suggests a possible prospect for the commercial production of heparin.

The K5 lyase can also be used *in vitro* to study the biosynthesis and export of the K5 capsular polysaccharide by different *kps* mutants. Here, polysaccharide produced by these mutants are radiolabelled, and spheroplast or inverted membrane vesicles made from the mutant(s) under study. The K5 lyase enzyme can then be used to cleave radiolabelled polysaccharides exposed to the periplasmic side (in the case of spheroplasts) and the cytoplasmic side (for reverse membrane vesicles) of the inner membrane, before assaying for the amount of radiolabelled polymer within the cytoplasm or exported across the inner membrane to the periplasm. The difference in radioactivity between the spheroplast for instance, and the intact cells will give an indication of the amount of polysaccharide exported across the inner membrane. In a pulse-chase experiment where cells are collected at different time points, such data generated can give an indication of the efficiency in biosynthesis and export of capsular polysaccharide by different mutants.

Thus, the purification of the K5 lyase enzyme will be of great importance in providing a homogenous enzyme that could find useful biotechnological applications. Structural studies including site-directed mutagenesis will be required to address some of the structure-function properties of the K5 lyase enzyme.

As a result of my studies, we have gained significant insight into the mechanisms involved in the cell surface expression of group II capsular polysaccharides in *E. coli* . In addition, the cloning and expression of an active K5 lyase may provide an enzyme for use in a number of commercial biotechnological ventures.

References

Abe, M., J.E. Sherwood, R.I. Hollingsworth, and F.B. Dazzo. 1984. Stimulation of clover root hair infection by lectin-binding oligosaccharides from capsular polysaccharides of *Rhizobium trifolii* . J. Bacteriol. **160**: 517-520.

Adlam, C., J.M. Knight, A. Mugridge, J.M. Williams, and J.C. Lindon. 1987. Production of colominic acid by *Pasteurella haemolytica* serotype A2 organism. FEMS Microbiol. Lett. **42**: 23-25.

Akimura, J., S.-I. Matsuyama, H. Tokuda, and S. Mizushima. 1991. Reconstitution of a protein translocation system containing purified SecY, SecE and SecA from *Escherichia coli* . Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA **88**: 6545-6549.

Akiyama, Y., and K. Ito. 1987. Topology analysis of the SecY protein, an integral membrane protein involved in protein export in *Escherichia coli* . EMBO J. **6**: 3465-3470.

Allen, P., I.S. Roberts, G. Boulnois, J. Saunders, and C. Hart. 1987. Contribution of capsular polysaccharide and surface properties to virulence of *Escherichia coli* K1. Infect. Immun. **55**: 2662-2668.

Altman, E., G.G.S. Dutton, and A.M. Stephen. 1986. Preparative scale depolymerisation of capsular polysaccharide from *E. coli* K28 using bacteriophage 28-1. S. Afr. J. Sci. **82**: 45-46.

Altschul, S.F., W. Gish, W. Miller, and E.W. Myers. 1990. Basic local alignment search tool. J. Mol. Biol. **215**: 403-410.

Amemura, A., T. Harada, M. Abe, and S. Higashi. 1983. Strucural studies of the extracellular acid polysaccharide from *Rhizobium trifolii* 4S. Carbohydr. Res. **115**: 165-174.

Ames, G.F.L., C.S. Mimura, and V. Shyamala. 1990. Bacterial periplasmic permeases belong to a family of transport proteins operating from *E. coli* to human: traffic ATPases. FEMS Microbiol. Rev. **75**: 429-446.

Anderson, A.N., and H. Parolis. 1989. Investigation of the structure of the capsular polysaccharide of *E. coli* K55 using *Klebsiella* bacteriophage ø5. Carbohydr. Res. **188**: 157-168.

Annunziato, P., L. Wright, W. Vann, and R. Silver. 1995. Nucleotide sequence and genetic analysis of the *neuD* and *neuB* genes in region 2 of the polysialic acid gene cluster of *Escherichia coli* K1. J. Bacteriol. **177**: 312-319.

Arrecubieta, C., R. López, and E. García. 1994. Molecular characterisation of *cap3a* , a gene from the operon required for the synthesis of the capsule of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* type 3: sequencing of mutations responsible for the unencapsulated phenotype and localisation of the capsular cluster in the pneumococcal chromosome. J. Bacteriol. **176**: 6375-6383.

Barnet, Y.M., and B. Humphrey. 1975. Exopolysaccharide depolymerases induced by *Rhizobium* bacteriophages. Can. J. Microbiol. **21**: 1647-1650.

Bastin, D.A., G. Stevenson, P.K. Brown, A. Haase, and P.R. Reeves. 1993. Repeat unit polysaccharides of bacteria: a model for polymerisation resembling that of ribosomes and fatty acid synthetase, with a novel mechanism for determining chain length. Mol. Microbiol. 7: 725-734.

Batchelor, R., P. Alifano, E. Biffali, S. Hull, and A. Hull. 1992. Nucleotide sequences of the genes regulating O-polysaccharide chain length (*rol*) from *Escherichia coli* and *Salmonella typhimurium* : protein homology and functional complementation. J. Bacteriol. **174**: 5228-5236.

Batchelor, R.A., G.E. Haraguchi, R.A. Hull, and S.I. Hull. 1991. Regulation by a novel protein of the bimodal distribution of lipopolysaccharide in the outer membrane of *Escherichia coli* . J. Bacteriol. **173**: 5699-5704.

Bayer, M. 1990. Visualisation of the bacterial polysaccharide capsule. Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol. **150**: 129-157.

Bayer, M., and H. Thurow. 1977. Polysaccharide capsule of *Escherichia coli* : Microscope study of its size, structure and sites of synthesis. J. Bcateriol. **130**: 911-936.

Bayer, M., H. Thurow, and M.H. Bayer. 1979. Penetration of the polysaccharide capsule of *E. coli* (Bi 161/42) by bacteriophage K29. Virol. **94**: 95-118.

Bayer, M.E., and M.H. Bayer. 1994. Biophysical and structural aspects of the bacterial capsule: the hydrated polysaccharides provide a means for analyzing important activities along bacterial cell surfaces. ASM News. **60**: 192-198.

Berry, A., J. DeVault, and A. Chakrabarty. 1989. High osmolarity is a signal for enhanced *algD* transcrition in mucoid and nonmucoid *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* strains. J. Bacteriol. **171**: 2312-2317.

Bhattacharjee, A., H. Jennings, C. Keeny, A. Martin, and I. Smith. 1975. Structural determination of the sialic acid polysaccharide antigens of *Neisseria meningitidis* serogroups B and C with carbon 13 nuclear magnetic resonance. J. Biol. Chem. **250**: 1926-1932.

Biggin, M., T. Gibson, and G. Hong. 1983. Buffer gradient gels for ^{35}S label as an aid to rapid DNA sequence determination. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA **80**: 3963-3965.

Binet, R., and C. Wandersman. 1995. Protein secretion by hybrid bacterial ABC-transporters: specific functions of the membrane ATPase and the membrane fusion proetin. EMBO J. **14**: 2298-2306.

Binet, R., and C. Wandersman. 1996. Cloning of the *Serratia marcescens hasF* gene encoding the Has ABC exporter outer membrane component: a TolC analogue. Mol. Microbiol. **22**: 265-273.

Birnboim, H., and J. Doly. 1979. A rapid alkaline extraction procedure for screening recombinant plasmid DNA. Nucleic Acids Res. **1**: 1513-1523.

Blair, J.E., and R.E.O. Williams. 1961. Phage typing of staphylococci. Bull. W.H.O. **24**: 771-784.

Bliss, J.M., and R.P. Silver. 1996. Coating the surface: a model for expression of capsular polysialic acid in *Escherichia coli* K1. Mol. Microbiol. **21**: 221-231.

Blobel, G. 1980. Intracellular protein topogenesis. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA **77**: 1496-1500.

Blomfield, I., V. Vaughn, R. Rest, and B. Eisentein. 1991. Allelic exchange in *Escherichia coli* using the *Bacillus subtilis sacB* gene and a temperature-sensitive pSC101 replicon. Mol. Microbiol. **5**: 1447-1457.

Boulnois, G., and I. Roberts. 1990. Genetics of capsular polysaccharide production in bacteria. Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol. **150**: 1-18.

Boulnois, G., and K. Jann. 1989. Bacterial polysaccharide capsule synthesis, export and evolution of structural diversity. Mol. Microbiol. **3**: 1819-1823.

Boulnois, G., C. Drake, R. Pearce, and I. Roberts. 1992. Genome diversity at the *serA* -linked capsule locus in *Escherichia coli* . FEMS Microbiol. Lett. **100**: 121-124.

Boulnois, G., I. Roberts, R. Hodge, K. Hardy, K. Jann, and K. Timmis. 1987. Analysis of the K1 capsule biosynthesis genes of *Escherichia coli* : definition of three functional regions for capsule production. Mol. Gen. Genet. **208**: 242-246.

Boyd, D., and J. Beckwith. 1990. The role of charged amino acids in the localization of secreted and membrane proteins. Cell **62**: 1031-1033.

Bronner, D., B.R. Clarke, and C. Whitfield. 1994. Identification of an ATP-binding cassette transport system required for translocation of lipopolysaccharide O-antigen side-chains across the cytoplasmic membrane of *Klebsiella pneumoniae* serotype O1. Mol. Microbiol. **14**: 505-519.

Bronner, D., V. Sieberth, C. Pazzani, A. Smith, G. Boulnois, I. Roberts, B. Jann, and K. Jann. 1993b. Synthesis of the K5 (group II) capsular

polysaccharide in transport-deficient recombinant *Escherichia coli* . FEMS Microbiol. Lett. **113**: 279-284.

Bronner, D., V. Sieberth, C. Pazzani, I. Roberts, G. Boulnois, B. Jann, and K. Jann. 1993a. Expression of the capsular K5 polysaccharide of *Escherichia coli* : biochemical and electron microscopic analyses of mutants with defects in region 1 of the K5 gene cluster. J. Bacteriol. **175**: 5984-5992.

Broome-Smith, J.K., and B.G. Spratt. 1986. A vector for the construction of translational fusions to TEM β-lactamase and the analysis of protein export signals and membrane protein topology. Gene **49**: 341-349.

Brown, P.K., L.K. Romana, and P.R. Reeves. 1992. Molecular analysis of the *rfb* gene cluster of *Salmonella* serovar muenchen (strain M67): the genetic basis of polymorphism between groups C2 and B. Mol. Microbiol. **6**: 1385-1394.

Bundle, D.R., I.C.P. Smith, and H.J. Jennings. 1974. Determination of the structure and conformation of bacterial polysaccharides by carbon-13 nuclear magnetic resonance. J. Biol. Chem. **249**: 2275-2281.

Cabelli, R.J., K.M. Dolan, L. Qian, and D.B. Oliver. 1991. Characterization of membrane-associated and soluble states of SecA protein from wild-type and *SecA* 51(TS) mutant strains of *Escherichia coli* . J. Biol. Chem. **266**: 24420-24427.

Cadoz, M., J. Armand, F. Arminjon, R. Gire, and C. Lafaix. 1985. Tetravalent (A,C,Y,W135) meningococcal vaccine in children: immunogenicity and safety. Vaccine **3**: 340-342.

Calamia, J., and C. Manoil. 1992. Membrane protein spanning segments as export signals. J. Mol. Biol. **224**: 539-543.

Cangelosi, G.A., G. Martinetti, J.A. Leigh, C.C. Lee, C. Theines, and E.W. Nester. 1989. Role of *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* ChvA protein in export of β-1,2-glucan. J. Bacteriol. **171**: 1609-1615.

Casu, B., G. Grazioli, N. Razi, M. Guerrini, A. Naggi, G. Torri, P. Oreste, F. Tursi, G. Zoppetti, and U. Lindahl. 1994. Heparin-like compounds prepared by chemical modification of capsular polysaccharide from *E. coli* K5. Carbohydr. Res. **263**: 271-284.

Chakraborty, A., H. Friebolin, and S. Stirm. 1980. Primary structure of the *Escherichia coli* serotype K30 capsular polysaccharide. J. Bacteriol. **141**: 971-972.

Chang, A.C.Y., and S.N. Cohen. 1978. Construction and characterization of amplifiable multicopy DNA cloning vehicles derived from the p15A cryptic miniplasmid. J. Bacteriol. **134**: 1141-1156.

Choy, Y.M., F. Fehmel, N. Frank, and S. Stirm. 1975. *Escherichia coli* capsule bacteriophages. VI. Primary structure of the bacteriophage 29 receptor, the *E. coli* serotype 29 capsular polysaccharide. J. Virol. **16**: 581-590.

Cieslewicz, M., S. Steenbergen, and E. Vimr. 1993. Cloning, sequencing, expression and complementation analysis of the *Escherichia coli* K1 *kps* region 1 gene, *kpsE,* and identification of an upstream open reading frame with homology to GutQ. J. Bacteriol. **175**: 8018-8023.

Clarke, B.R., D. Bronner, W.J. Keenleyside, W.B. Severn, J.C. Richards, and C. Whitfield. 1995. Role of Rfe and RfbF in the initiation of biosynthesis of D-galactan I, the lipopolysaccharide O antigen from *Klebsiella pneumoniae* serotype O1. J. Bacteriol. **177**: 5411-5418.

Collins, L.V., and J. Hackett. 1991. Molecular cloning, characterisation and nucleotide sequence of the *rfc* gene encoding an O-antigen polymerase of *Salmonella typhimurium* . J. Bacteriol. **173**: 2521-2529.

Conrad, H.E., J.R. Bamburg, J.D. Epley, and T.J. Kindt. 1966. The structure of the *Aerobacter aerogenes* A351 polysaccharide. II. Sequence analysis and hydrolysis studies. Biochem. **5**: 2808-2817.

Costerton, J., K.J. Cheng, G. Geesey, T. Ladd, J. Nickel, M. Dasgupta, and T. Marrie. 1987. Bacterial biofilms in nature and disease. Ann. Rev. Microbiol. **41**: 435-466.

Costerton, J., R. Irvin, and K.J. Cheng. 1981. The bacterial glycocalyx in nature and disease. Ann. Rev. Mcrobiol. **35**: 299-324.

Crisel, R.M., R.S. Baker, and D.E. Dorman. 1975. Capsular polymer of *Haemophilus influenzae* type b. Part 1. Structural characterisation of the capsular polymer of strain Eagan. J. Biol. Chem. **250**: 4926-4930.

Cross, A. 1990. The biological significance of bacterial encapsulation. Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol. **150**: 87-95.

Cross, A.S., K.S. Kim, D.C. Wright, J.C. Sadoff, and P. Gemski. 1986. Role for lipopolysaccharide and capsule in the serum resistance of bacteremic strains of *Escherichia coli* . J. Infect. Dis. **154**: 497-503.

Davidson, I.W., C.J. Lawson, and I.W. Sutherland. 1977. An alginate lyase from *Azotobacter vinelandii* phage. J. Gen. Microbiol.**98**: 223-229.

Davidson, I.W., I.W. Sutherland, and C.J. Lawson. 1977. Localization of *O* -acetyl groups of bacterial alginate. J. Gen. Microbiol. **98**: 603-606.

de Cock, H., and J. Tommassen. 1991. Conservation of components of the *Escherichia coli* export machinery in prokaryotes. FEMS Microbiol. Lett. **80**: 195-200.

de Cock, H., and J. Tommassen. 1992. SecB-binding does not maintain the translocation-component state of prePhoE. Mol. MIcrobiol. **6**: 599-604.

Debelle, D.B., C. Rosenberg, and J. Denarie. 1992. The *Rhizobium* , and *Azorhizobium* NodC proteins are homologous to yeast chitin synthases. Mol. Plant-Microbe Interact. **5**: 443-446.

Delepelaire, P., and C. Wandersman. 1990. Protein secretion in Gram-negative bacteria. J. Biol. Chem. **265**: 17118-17125.

Delepelaire, P., and C. Wandersman. 1991. Characterization, localization and transmembrane organization of the three proteins, PrtD, PrtE and PrtF necessary for protease secretion by the Gram-negative bacterium *Erwinia chrysanthemi* . Mol. Microbiol. **5**: 2427-2434.

Desai, U.R., H.M. Wang, and R.J. Linhardt. 1993. Specificity studies on the heparin lyases from *Flavobacterium heparinum* . Biochem. **32**: 8140-8145.

Devereux, J., P. Haeberli, and O. Smithies. 1984. A comprehensive set of sequence analysis programs for the VAX. Nucliec Acids Res. **12**: 387-395.

DeWitt, C.W., and J.A. Rowe. 1961. Sialic acid (N,7-O-diacetyneuraminic acid and N-acetylneuraminic acid) in *Escherichia coli* . Isolation and identification. J. Bacteriol. **82**: 838-848.

Dinh, T., I.T. Paulsen, and M.H. Saier,Jr. 1994. A family of extracytoplasmic proteins that allow transport of large molecules across the outer membranes of gram-negative bacteria. J. Bacteriol. **176**: 3825-3831.

Dodgson, C., P. Amor, and C. Whitfield. 1996. Distribution of the *rol* gene encoding the regulator of lipopolysaccharide O-chain length in *Escherichia coli* and its influence on the expression of group I capsular K antigens. J. Bacteriol. **178**: 1895-1902.

Donnenberg, M., and J. Kaper. 1991. Construction of an *eae* deletion mutant of enteropathogenic *Escherichia coli* by using a positive-selection suicide vector. Infect. Immun. **59**: 4310-4317.

Doolittle, R.F. 1986. Of URFs and ORFs, a primer on how to analyse derived amino acid sequences. University Science Books.

Dougherty, B., and I. Van de Rijn. 1993. Molecular characterisation of *hasB* from an operon required for hyaluronic acid synthesis in group A streptococci. Demonstration of UDP-glucose dehydrogenase activity. J. Biol. Chem. **268**: 7118-7124.

Dower, W., J. Miller, and C. Ragsdale. 1988. High efficiency transformation of *E. coli* by high voltage electroporation. Nucliec Acids Res. **16**: 6127-6145.

Drake, C.R. 1991. Molecular studies of *Escherichia coli* capsule gene clusters. Ph.D thesis. University of Leicester. UK.

Drake, C.R., G. Boulnois, and I.S. Roberts. 1993. The *Escherichia coli serA* -linked capsule locus and its flanking sequences are polymorphic: genetic evidence for the existence of more than two groups of capsule gene clusters. J. Gen. Microbiol. **139**: 1707-1714.

Duckwort, D.J., J. Glenn, and D.J. McCorquodale. 1981. Inhibition of bacteriophage replication by extrachromosomal genetic elements. Microbiol. Rev. **45**: 52-71.

Dudman, W. 1977. The role of surface polysaccharides in natural environments. In: I. Sutherland (ed.) Surface carbohydrates of the prokaryotic cell. Academic Press. New York. pp. 357-414.

Echarti, C., B. Hirschel, G. Boulnois, J. Varley, F. Waldvogel, and K. Timmis. 1983. Cloning and analysis of the K1 capsule biosynthesis genes of *Escherichia coli* : lack of homology with *Neisseria meningitidis* group B DNA sequences. Infect. Immun. **41**: 54-60.

Edwards, U., A. Muller, S. Hammerschmidt, R. Gerady-Scahn, and M. Frosch. 1994. Molecular analysis of the biosythesis pathway of the α2,8 polysialic acid capsule by *Neisseria meningitidis* serogroup B. Mol. Microbiol. **14**: 141-150.

Elvin, C.M., P.R. Thompson, M.E. Argall, P. Hendry, N.P.J. Stamford, P.E. Lilley, and N.E. Dixon. 1990. Modified bacteriophage lambda promoter vectors for overproduction of proteins in *Escherichia coli* . Gene **87**: 123-126.

Ely, S., J. Tippett, and E.R. Moxon. 1989. Identification and characterization of serotype b-specific segment of the *Haemophilu influenzae* genome. Infect. Immun. **57**: 2926-2928.

Endicott, J.A., and V. Ling. 1989. The biochemistry of P-glycoprotein-mediated multidrug resistance. Annu. Rev. Biochem. **58**: 137-171.

Esumeh, F.I., and I.S. Roberts. 1995. Topological analysis of the KpsE protein of *Escherichia coli* K5, abstract B243. Abstr. 95th Gen. Meet. Am. Soc. Microbiol. p. 208.

Farrel, A.M., D. Taylor, and K.T. Holland. 1995. Cloning, nucleotide sequence determination and expression of the *Staphylococcus aureus* hyaluronate lyase gene. FEMS Microbiol. Lett. **130**: 81-85.

Fath, M.J., and R. Kolter. 1993. ABC transporters: Bacterial exporters. Microbiol. Rev. **57**: 995-1017.

Feinberg, A., and B. Vogelstein. 1983. A technique for radiolabelling DNA restriction endonuclease fragments to high specific activity. Anal. Biochem. **132**: 6-13.

Felmlee, T., S. Pellett, and R.A. Welch. 1985. Nucleotide sequence of an *Escherichia coli* chromosomal hemolysin. J. Bacteriol. **163**:94-105.

Finke, A., B. Jann, and K. Jann. 1990. CMP-KDO-synthetase activity in *Escherichia coli* expressing capsular polysaccharides. FEMS Microbiol. Lett. **69**: 129-134.

Finke, A., I.S. Roberts, G.J. Boulnois, C. Pazzani, and K. Jann. 1989. Activity of CMP-2-keto-3-deoxyoctulosonic acid synthetase in *Escherichia coli* strains expressing the capsular K5 polysaccharide: implication for K5 polysaccharide biosynthesis. J. Bacteriol. **171**: 3074-3079.

Finne, J., M. Leinonen, and P.H. Mäkelä. 1983. Antigenic similarities between brain components and bacteria causing meningitis; implications for vaccine development. Lancet **2**: 355-357.

Foote, S.J., J.K. Thompson, A.F. Cowman, and D.J. Kemp. 1989. Amplification of the multidrug resistance gene in some chloroquine-resistant isolates of *P. falciparum* . Cell **57**: 921-930.

Frank, M., K. Joiner, and C. Hammer. 1987. The function of antibody and complement in the lysis of bacteria. Rev. Infect. Dis. **9**: S537-S545.

Franke, C.M., K.J. Leenhouts, A.J. Haandrikman, J. Kok, G. Venema, and K. Venema. 1996. Topology of LcnD, a protein implicated in the transport of bacteriocins from *Lactococcus lactis* . J. Bacteriol. **178**: 1766-1769.

Frosch, M., and A. Müller. 1993. Phospholipid substitution of capsular polysaccharides and mechanisms of capsule formation in *Neisseria meningitidis* . Mol. Microbiol. **8**: 483-493.

Frosch, M., C. Weisgerber, and T. Meyer. 1989. Molecular characterisation and expression in *Escherichia coli* of the gene complex encoding the polysaccharide capsule of *Neisseria meningitidis* group B. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA **84**: 1669-1673.

Frosch, M., U. Edwards, K. Bousset, B. Krauβe, and C. Weisgerber. 1991. Evidence for a common molecular origin of capsular gene loci in Gram-negative bacteria expressing group II capsular polysaccharides. Mol. Microbiol. **5**: 1251-1263.

Gafvelin, G., and G. von Heijne. 1994. Topological "frustration" in multispanning *E. coli* inner membrane proteins. Cell **77**: 401-412.

Ganguli, S., G. Zapata, T. Wallis, C. Reid, G. Boulnois, W. Vann, and I.S. Roberts. 1994. Molecular cloning and analysis of the genes for sialic acid synthesis in *Neisseria meningitidis* group B and purification of the meningococcal CMP-NeuNAc synthetase enzyme. J. Bacteriol. **176**: 4583-4589.

Gardel, C., K. Johnson, A. Jacq, and J. Beckwith. 1990. The *secD* locus of *E. coli* codes for two membrane proteins required for protein export. EMBO J. **9**: 3209-3216.

Gerardy-Schahn, R., A. Bethe, T. Brenneske, M. Mühlenhoff, M. Eckhardt, S. Ziesing, F. Lottspeich, and M. Frosch. 1995. Molecular cloning and functional expression of bacteriophage PK1E-encoded endoneuraminidase Endo NE. Mol. Microbiol. **16**: 441-450.

Gilson, L., H.K. Mahanty, and R. Kolter. 1987. Four plasmid genes are required for colicin V synthesis, export, and immunity. J. Bacteriol. **169**: 2466-2470.

Gilson, L., H.K. Mahanty, and R. Kolter. 1990. Genetic analysis of an MDR-like export system: the secretion of colicin V. EMBO J. **9**: 3875-3884.

Glucksmann, M.A., T.L. Reuber, and G.C. Walker. 1993. Family of glycosyl transferases needed for the synthesis of succinoglycan by *Rhizobium meliloti* . J. Bacteriol. **175**: 7033-7044.

Goldman, R., and W. Kohlbrenner. 1985. Molecular cloning of the structural gene coding for CTP:CMP-3-deoxy-*manno* -octolosonate cytidyltransferase from *Escherichia coli* K-12. J. Bacteriol. **163**: 256-261.

Gotschlich, E., B. Fraser, O. Nishimura, J. Robbins, and T.Y. Liu. 1981. Lipid on capsular polysaccharides of Gram negative bacteria. J. Biol. Chem. **256**: 8915-8921.

Gotschlich, E., I. Goldschneider, M. Lepow, and R. Gold. 1977. The immune responses to bacterial polysaccharides in man. In: E. Haber and R. Krause (eds.) Antibodies in human diagnosis and therapy. Raven Press, New York. pp.391-402.

Govan, J. 1988. Alginate biosynthesis and other unusual characteristics associated with the pathogenesis of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* in cystic fibrosis. In: E. Griffiths, W. Donachie and J. Stephens (eds) Bacterial infections of the respiratory and gastrointestinal mucosae, Oxford IRL Press, pp. 67-96.

Gray, J., and B. Rolfe. 1990. Exopolysaccharide production in *Rhizobium* and its role in invasion. Mol. Microbiol. **4**: 1425-1431.

Gromska, W., and H. Mayer. 1976. The linkage of lysine in the O-specific chains of *Proteus mirabilis* . Eur. J. Biochem. **62**: 391-399.

Gross, R.J., T. Cheasty, and B. Rowe. 1977. Isolation of bacteriophages specific for the K1 polysaccharide antigen of *Escherichia coli* . J. Clin. Microbiol. **6**: 548-550.

Gunn, F.J., C.G. Tate, C.E. Sansom, and P.J.F. Henderson. 1995. Topological analyses of the L-fucose-H^+ symport protein, FucP, from *Escherichia coli* . Mol. Microbiol. **15**: 771-783.

Gupta, D.S., B. Jann, and K. Jann. 1982a. Enzymatic degradation of the K5-antigen of *E. coli* by coliphage K5. FEMS Microbiol. Lett. **16**: 13-17.

Gupta, D.S., B. Jann, G. Schmidt, J.R. Golecki, F. Ørskov, and K. Jann. 1982. Coliphage K5, specific for *E. coli* exhibiting the capsular K5 antigen. FEMS Microbiol. Lett. **14**: 75-78.

Gygi, D., M. Rahman, H.C. Lai, R. Carlson, J. Guard-Petter, and C. Hughes. 1995. A cell-surface polysaccharide that facilitates rapid population migration by differentiated swarm cells of *Proteus mirabilis* . Mol. Microbiol. **17**: 1167-1175.

Hallenbeck, P.C., E.R. Vimr, F. Yu, B. Bassler, and F.A. Troy. 1987. Purification and properties of a bacteriophage-induced endo-*N* -acetylneuraminidase specific for poly-α-2,8-sialosyl carbohydrate units. J. Biol. Chem. **262**: 3553-3561.

Hammerschmidt, S., C. Birkholz, U. Zähringer, B. Robertson, J. van Putten, O. Ebeling, and M. Frosch. 1994. Contribution of genes from the capsule gene complex (*cps*) to lipooligosaccharide biosythesis and serum resistance in *Neisseria meningitidis* . Mol. Microbiol. **11**: 885-896.

Hancock, I.C., and C.M. Cox. 1991. Turnover of cell surface-bound capsular polysaccharide in *Staphylococcus aureus* . FEMS Microbiol. Lett. **77**: 25-30.

Hänfling, P., S.A. Shaskov, B. Jann, and K. Jann. 1996. Analysis of the enzymatic cleavage (β-elimination) of the capsular K5 polysaccharide of *Escherichia coli* by the K5-specific coliphage: a reexamination. J. Bacteriol. **178**: 4747-4750.

Harding, N.E., J.M. Cleary, D.K. Cabanas, I.G. Rosen, and K.S. Kang. 1987. Genetic and physical analyses of a cluster of genes essential for xanthan gum biosynthesis in *Xanthomonas campestris* . J. Bacteriol.**169**: 2854-2861.

Hardy, S.J.S., and L.L. Randall. 1991. A kinetic partitioning model of selective binding of nonnative proteins by the bacterial chaperone SecB. Science **251**: 439-443.

Hickman-Brenner, F.W., A.D. Stubbs, and J.J. Farmer III. 1991. Phage typing of *Salmonella enteritidis* in the United States. J. Clin. Microbiol. **29**: 2817-2823.

Higashi, S., and M. Abe. 1978. Phage-induced depolymerase for exopolysaccharides of Rhizobiaceae. J. Gen. Appl. Microbiol. **24**: 143-153.

Higgins, C.F. 1992. ABC transporters: from microorganisms to man. Annu. Rev. Cell Biol. **8**: 67-113.

Higgins, C.F., I.D. Hiles, G.P.C. Salmond, D.R. Gill, J.A. Evans, I.B. Holland, L. Gray, S.D. Buckel, A.W. Bell, and M.A. Hermodson. 1986. A family of related ATP-binding subunits coupled to many distinct biological processes in bacteria. Nature (London) **323**: 448-450.

Higgins, C.F., I.D. Hiles, K. Whalley, and D.J. Jamieson. 1985. Nucleotide binding by membrane components of bacterial periplasmic binding protein-dependent transport systems. EMBO J. **4**: 1033-1040.

Higgins, D.G., A.J. Blaesby, and R. Fuchs. 1994. Improved software for multiple sequence alignment. Scientist **8**: 17.

Hobbs, M., and P. Reeves. 1994. The JUMPstart sequence: a 39 bp element common to several polysaccharide gene clusters. Mol. Microbiol.**12**: 855-856.

Hofmann, P., B. Jann, and K. Jann. 1985. Structure of the amino acid-containing polysaccharide (K54 antigen) from *Escherichia coli* O6:K54:H10. Carbohydr. Res. **139**: 261-271.

Holland, D., and C.P. Wolk. 1990. Identification and characterisation of *hetA* , a gene that acts early in the prcess of morphological differentiation of heterocysts. J. Bacteriol.**172**: 3131-3137.

Hollingsworth, R.I., M. Abe, and F. Dazzo. 1984. Identification of ether-linked 3-hydroxybutanoic acid in the extracellular polysaccharide of *Rhizobium trifolii* 0403. Carbohydr. Res. **133**: C1-C4.

Horwitz, M., and S. Silverstein. 1980. Influence of the *Escherichia coli* capsule on complement fixation and on phagocytosis and killing by human phagocytes. J. Clin. Invest. **65**: 82-94.

Hynes, W.L., and J.J. Ferretti. 1989. Sequence analysis and expression in *Escherichia coli* of the lyaluronidase gene of *Streptococcus pyogenes* bacteriophage H4489A. Infect. Immun. **57**: 533-539.

Ito, K. 1992. SecY and integral membrane components of the *Escherichia coli* protein translocation system. Mol. Microbiol. **6**: 2423-2428.

Jandik, K.A., K. Gu, and R.J. Linhardt. 1994. Action pattern of polysaccharide lyases on glycosaminoglycans. Glycobiology **4**: 289-296.

Jann, B., and K. Jann. 1990. Structure and biosynthesis of the capsular antigens of *Escherichia coli* . Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol. **150**: 19-42.

Jann, B., K. Jann, G. Schmidt, F. Ørskov, and I. Ørskov. 1971. Comparative immunochemical studies of the surface antigens of *Escherichia coli* strains O8:K87(B):H19 and O32: K87(B):H45. Eur. J. Biochem. **23**: 515-522.

Jann, B., R. Ahrens, T. Dengler, and K. Jann. 1988. Structure of capsular polysaccharide K19 from uropathogenic *Escherichia coli* O25: K19:H12. Carbohydr. Res. **177**: 273-277.

Jann, K, and B. Jann. 1983. The K antigens of *Escherichia coli* . Prog. Allergy **33**: 53-79.

Jann, K., and B. Jann. 1987. Polysaccharide antigens of *Escherichia coli* . Rev. Infect. Dis. [Suppl. 5] **9**: 517-526.

Jann, K., and B. Jann. 1992. Capsules of *Escherichia coli* , expression and biological significance. Can. J. Microbiol. **38**: 705-710.

Jann, K., B. Jann, M.A. Schmidt and W.F. Vann. 1980. Structure of the *Escherichia coli* K2 capsular antigen, a teichoic acid like polymer. J. Bacteriol. **143**: 1102-1115.

Jann, K., T. Dengler, and B. Jann. 1992. Core-lipid A on the K40 polysaccharide of *Escherichia coli* O8:K40:H9, a representative of group I capsular polysaccharides. Zentrablatt für Bakteriol. **276**: 196-204.

Jarosik, G.P., and D.B. Oliver. 1991. Isolation and analysis of dominant *secA* mutations in *Escherichia coli* . J. Bacteriol. **173**: 860-868.

Jenkinson, F.F. 1994. Adherence and accumulation of oral streptococci. Trends Microbiol. **2**: 209-212.

Jennings, H. 1990. Capsular polysaccharides as vaccine candidates. Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol. **150**: 97-128.

Jennings, H., J.P. Brisson, M. Kulakowska, and F. Michon. 1993. Polysialic acid vaccines against meningitis caused by *Neisseria meningitidis* and *Escherichia coli* K1. In: J. Roth, U. Rutishauser and F. Troy II (eds) Polysialic acid: from microbes to man. Birkhäuser, Verlag, Basel, pp. 25-38.

Jennings, H.J. 1983. Capsular polysaccharides as human vaccines. Adv. Carbohydr. Chem. Biochem. **41**: 155-208.

Jennings, H.J., R. Roy, and A. Gamian. 1986. Induction of meningococcal group B polysaccharide-specific IgG antibodies in mice by using an N-proprionylated B polysaccharide-tetanus toxoid conjugate vaccine. J. Immunol. **137**: 1708-1713.

Joiner, K. 1985. Studies on the mechanism of bacterial resistance to complement-mediated killing and the mechanism of action of bacteriocidal antibody. Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol. **121**: 99-133.

Joiner, K.A., E.J. Brown, and M.M Frank. 1984. Complement and bacteria: chemistry and biology in the host defence. Annu. Rev. Immunol. **2**: 461-492.

Kaijser, B. 1977. A simple method for typing acidic polysaccharide K antigens of *Escherichia coli* . FEMS Microbiol. Lett. **1**: 285-288.

Kampfenkel, K., and V. Braun. 1993. Topology of the ExbB protein in the cytoplasmic membrane of *Escherichia coli* . J. Biol. Chem. **268**: 6050-6057.

Kanegasaki, S., and A. Wright. 1973. Studies on the mechanism of phage adsorption: interaction between phage ε15 and its cellular receptor. Virology **52**: 160-173.

Karlsson, M., K. Hannavy and C.F. Higgins. 1993. A sequence-specific function for the N-terminal signal-like sequence of the TonB protein. Mol. Microbiol. **8**: 379-388.

Kaspar, D.L., J.L. Winkelhake, W.D. Zollinger, B.L. Brandt, and M.S. Artenstein. 1973. Immunochemical similarity between polysaccharide antigens of *Escherichia coli* O7:K1L:NM and group B *Neisseria meningitidis* . J. Immunol. **110**: 262-268.

Kawaoka, Y., K. Otsuki, and M. Tsubokura. 1983. Growth temperature-dependent variation in the bacteriophage-inactivating capacity and antigenicity of *Yersinia enterocolitica* lipopolysaccharide. J. Gen. Microbiol. **129**: 2739-2747.

Keenleyside, W., P. Jayaratne, P. MacLachlan, and C. Whitfield. 1992. The *rcsA* gene of *Escherichia coli* O9:K30:H12 is involved in the expression of the serotype-specific group I K (capsular) antigen. J. Bacteriol. **174**: 8-16.

Kellenberger, E. 1987. The response of biological macrmolecules and supramolecular structures to the physics of specimen cryopreparation. In: Steinbrecht R.A. and K. Zierold (eds) Cryotechniques in biological electron microscopy. Springer, Berlin Heidelberg, pp. 100-105.

Kellenberger, E. 1990. The 'Bayer bridges' confronted with results from improved electron microscopy methods. Mol. Microbiol. **4**: 697-705.

Kenne, L., and B. Lindberg. 1983. Bcaterial polysaccharides. In: Aspinall, G.O. (ed) The polysaccharides. Academic Press, New York pp. 287-360.

Kenny, B., R. Haigh, and I.B. Holland. 1991. Analysis of the haemolysin transport process through the secretion from *Escherichia coli* of PCM, CAT or β-galactosidase fused to the Hly C-terminal signal sequence. Mol. Microbiol. **5**: 2557-2568.

Kerpolla, R.E., V.K. Shyamala, P. Klebba, and G.F-L. Ames. 1991. The membrane-bound proteins of periplasmic permeases form a complex. J. Biol. Chem. **266**: 9857-9865.

Kim, K., J. Kang, and A. Cross. 1986. The role of capsular antigens in serum resistance and *in vivo* virulence of *Escherichia coli* . FEMS Microbiol. Lett. **35**: 257-278.

Kimura, A., and E. Hansen. 1986. Antigenic and phenotypic variations of *Haemophilus influenzae* type b lipopolysaccharide and their relationship to virulence. Infect. Immun. **51**: 69-79.

Klena, J.D., and C.A. Schnaitman. 1993. Function of the *rfb* gene cluster and the *rfe* gene in the sythesis of O antigen by *Shigella dysenteriae* 1. Mol. Microbiol. **9**: 393-402.

Kolter, R., M. Inuzuka, and D. Helinski. 1978. Transcomplementation-dependent replication of a low molecular weight origin fragment from plasmid R6K. Cell **15**: 1199-1208.

Koronakis, V., E. Koronakis, and C. Hughes. 1988. Comparison of the hemolysin secretion protein HlyB from *Proteus vulgaris* and *Escherichia coli* : site-directed mutagenesis causing impairment of export function. Mol. Gen. Genet. **213**: 551-555.

Koronakis, V., E. Koronakis, and C. Hughes. 1989. Isolation and analysis of the C-terminal signal directing export of *Escherichia coli* hemolysin protein across both bacterial membranes. EMBO J. **8**: 595-605.

Koronakis, V., M. Cross, R. Senior, E. Koronakis, and C. Hughes. 1987. The secreted hemolysins of *Proteus mirabilis, Proteus vulgaris,* and *Morganella morganii* are genetically related to each other and to the alpha-hemolysin of *Escherichia coli* . J. Bacteriol. **169**: 1509-1515.

Kroll, S., and E. Moxon. 1988. Capsulation and gene copy number at the *cap* locus of *Haemophilus influenzae* type b. J. Bacteriol. **170**: 859-864.

Kroll, S., B. Loynds, L. Brophy, and E. Moxon. 1990. The *bex* locus in encapsulated *Haemophilus influenzae* : a chromosomal region involved in capsular polysaccharide export. Mol. Microbiol. **4**: 1853-1862.

Kroll, S., S. Zamze, B. Loynds, and E. Moxon. 1989. Common organisation of chromosomal loci for production of different capsular polysaccharides in *Haemophilus influenzae* . J. Bacteriol. **171**: 3343-3347.

Kröncke, K., G. Boulnois, I. Roberts, D. Bitter-Suermann, J. Golecki, B. Jann, and K. Jann. 1990a. Expression of the *Escherichia coli* K5 capsular antigen: immunoelectron microscopic and biochemical studies with recombinant *E. coli* . J. Bacteriol. **172**: 1085-1091.

Kröncke, K., J. Golecki, and K. Jann. 1990b. Futher electron microscopic studies on the expression of *Escherichia coli* group II capsules. J. Bacteriol. **172**: 3469-3472.

Kuhn, A. 1988. Bacteriophage M13 procoat protein inserts into the plasma membrane as a loop structure. Science **238**: 1413-1415.

Kuhn, H.M., U. Meier, and H. Mayer. 1988. ECA, the enterobacterial common antigen. FEMS Microbiol. Rev. **54**: 195-222.

Kuhn, H.M., U. Meier-Dieter, and H. Mayer. 1988. ECA, the enterobacterial common antigen. FEMS Microbiol. Rev. **54**: 195-222.

Kumamoto, C.A. 1991. Molecular chaperones and protein tarnslocation across the *Escherichia coli* inner membrane. Mol. Microbiol. **5**: 19-22.

Kwiatkowski, B., B. Boschek, H. Thiele, and S. Stirm. 1982. Endo-*N* -acetylneuraminidase associated with bacteriophage particles. J. Virol. **43**: 697-704.

Kwiatkowski, B., B. Boschek, H. Thiele, and S. Stirm. 1983. Substrate specificity of two bacteriophage-associated endo-*N* -acetyneuraminidases. J. Virol. **45**: 367-375.

Kyte, J., and R. Doolittle. 1982. A simple method for displaying the hydropathic character of a protein. J. Mol. Biol. **157**: 1005-1032.

Laasko, D., M. Homonylo, S. Wilmot, and C. Whitfield. 1988. Transfer and expression of the genetic determinants for O and K antigen synthesis in *Escherichia coli* O9:K(A)30: and *Klebsiella* sp. O1:K20 in *E. coli* K-12. Can. J. Microbiol. **34**: 987-992.

Langer, R., R.J. Linhard, C.L. Cooney, M. Klein, D. Tapper, S.M. Hoffberg, and A. Larsen. 1982. An enzymatic system for removing heparin in extra-corporeal therapy. Science **217**: 261-263.

Lee, C. 1987. Bacterial capsular polysaccharides: biochemistry, immunity and vaccine. Mol. Immunol. **24**: 1005-1019.

Lee, J.-I., A. Kuhn, and R.E. Dalbey. 1992. Distinct domains of an oligotopic membrane protein are Sec-dependent and Sec-independent for membrane insertion. J. Biol. Chem. **267**: 938-943.

Lesley, S.M. 1961. Degradation of the polysaccharide of *Xanthomonas phaseoli* by an extracellular bacteria enzyme. Can. J. Microbiol. **7**: 815-825.

Letoffe, S., P. Delepelaire, and C. Wandersman. 1990. Protease secretion by *Erwinia chrysanthemi* : the specific secretion functions are analogous to those of *Escherichia coli* α-haemolysin. EMBO J. **9**: 1375-1382.

Letoffe, S., J.M. Ghigo, and C. Wandersman. 1993. Identification of two components of the *Serretia marcescens* metalloprotease transporter: protease SM secretion in *Escherichia coli* is TolC dependent. J. Bacteriol. **175**: 7321-7328.

Letoffe, S., J.M. Ghigo, and C. Wandersman. 1994. Secretion of the *Serretia marcescens* HasA protein by an ABC transporter. J. Bacteriol. **176**: 5372-5377.

Lidholt, K., and U. Lindahl. 1992. Biosynthesis of heparin. The D-glucuronosyl- and N-acetyl-D-glucosaminyl-transferase raections and their relation to polymer modification. Biochem. J. **287**: 21-29.

Lind, T., U. Lindahl, and K. Lidholt. 1993. Biosynthesis of heparin/heparan sulfate. J. Biol. Chem. **268**: 20705-20708.

Lindahl, U., K. Lidholt, D. Spillmann, and L. Kjellen. 1994. More to heparin than anticoagulation. Thromb. Res. **75**: 1-32.

Lindberg, A.A. 1977. Bacterial surface carbohydrates and bacteriophage adsorption. In: I.W. Sutherland (ed) Surface carbohydrates of the prokaryotic cell. Academic Press, Inc., New York, pp. 289-356.

Linhardt, R.J., A. Al-Hakim, J. Liu, D. Hoppensteadt, J. Fareed, G. Mascellani, and P. Bianchini. 1991. Structural features of dermatan sulfates and their relationship to anticoagulant and antithrombotic activities. Biochem. Pharmacol. **42**: 1609-1619.

Linhardt, R.J., G.L. Fitzgerald, C.L. Cooney, and R. Langer. 1982. Mode of action of heparin lyase on heparin. Biochim. Biophys. Acta **702**: 197-203.

Linhardt, R.J., K.G. Rice, Y.S. Kim, J. Engelken, and J. Weiler. 1988. Homogenous, structurally defined heparin-oligosaccharides with low anticoagulant activity inhibit the generation of the amplification pathway C3 convertase *in vitro* . J. Biol. Chem. **263**: 13090-13096.

Linhardt, R.J., P.M. Galliher, and C.L. Cooney. 1986. Polysaccharide lyases. Appl. Biochem. Biotechnol. **12**: 135-176.

Linhardt, R.J., S.A. Ampofo, J. Fareed, D. Hoppensteadt, J.B. Mulliken, and J. Folkman. 1992. Isolation and characterization of a human heparin. Biochemistry **31**: 12441-12445.

Lipman, D.J., and W.R. Pearson. 1985. Rapid and sensitive protein similarity searches. Science **227**: 1435-1441.

Liu, D., L. Lindqvist, and P.R. Reeves. 1995. Transferases of O-antigen biosynthesis in *Salmonella enterica* : dideoxyhexosyltransferases of group B and C2 and acetyltransferase of group C2. J. Bacteriol. **177**: 4084-4088.

Livingston, B.D., J.L. Jacobs, M.C. Glick, and F.A. Troy. 1988. Extended polysialic acid chains (n greater than 55) in glycoproteins from human neuroblastoma cells. J. Biol. Chem. **263**: 9443-9448.

Lohse, D.L., and R.J. Linhardt. 1992. Purification and characterization of heparin lyases from *Flavobacterium heparinum* . J. Biol. Chem. **267**: 24347-24355.

Long, G.S., J.M. Bryant, P.W. Taylor, and J.P. Luzio. 1995. Complete nucleotide sequence of the gene encoding bacteriophage E endosialidase:

implications for K1E endosialidase structure and function. Biochem. J. **309**: 543-550.

Long, G.S., P.W. Taylor, and J.P. Luzio. 1993. Characterisation of bacteriophage E endo-sialidase specific for alpha-2,8-linked polysialic acid. In: J. Roth, U. Rutishauser and F.A. Troy II (eds) Polysialic acid. Birkhäuser Verlag Basel, Switzerland pp. 137-144.

Loos, M. 1985. The complement system: activation and control. Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol. **121**: 7-18.

Lory, S. 1992. Determinants of extracellular protein secretion in gram-negative bacteria. J. Bacteriol. **174**: 3423-3428.

Mackman, N., K. Baker, L. Gray, R. Haigh, J. Nicaud, and I.B. Holland. 1987. Release of chimeric protein into the medium from *Escherichia coli* using the C-terminal secretion signal of haemolysin. EMBO J. **6**: 2835-2841.

MacLachlan, P., W. Keenleyside, C. Dodgson, and C. Whitfield. 1993. Formation of the K30 (group I) capsule of *Escherichia coli* O9:K30 does not require attachment to lipopolysaccharide lipid A-core. J. Bacteriol. **175**: 7515-7522.

Mäkelä, P.H. 1985. The use of bacteriophages and bacteriocins in the study of bacterial cell surface structures. In: T.K. Korhonen, E.A. Dawes and P.H. Mäkelä (eds) Enterobacterial surface antigens: methods for molecular characterisation. Elsevier Science Publishers (Biomedical Division) pp. 155-178.

Mäkelä, P.H., and B.A.D. Stocker. 1984. Genetics of lipopolysaccharides. In: E.T. Rietschel (ed) Handbook of Endotoxin, vol. I. Amsterdam, Elsevier Science Publishers, pp. 59-137.

Mandel, M., and A. Higa 1970. Calcium dependent bacteriophage DNA infection. J. Mol. Biol. **53**: 154.

Manoil, C., and J. Beckwith. 1985. Tn*phoA* : a transposon probe for protein export signals. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA **82**: 8129-8133.

Manoil, C., and J. Beckwith. 1986. A genetic approach to analyzing membrane protein topology. Science **233**: 1403-1408.

Matsuyama, S.-I., E. Kimura, and S. Mizushima. 1990. Complementation of two overlapping fragments of SecA, a protein translocation ATPase of *Escherichia coli* , allows ATP binding to its amino terminal region. J. Biol. Chem. **265**: 8760-8765.

McGrath, B.C., and M.J. Osborn. 1991. Localization of the terminal steps of O-antigen synthesis in *Salmonella typhimurium* . J. Bacteriol. **173**: 649-654.

McGuire, E., and S. Binckley. 1964. The structure and chemistry of colominic acid. Biochem. **3**: 247-251.

McLauchlin, R., S.M. Spinola, and M. Apicella. 1992. Generation of lipo-oligosaccharide mutants of *Haemophilus influenzae* type b. J. Bacteriol. **174**: 6455-6459.

Melton, D.A., P.A. Kreig, M.R. Rebagliati, T. Maniatis, K. Zinn, and M.R. Green. 1984.

Michaelis, S., H. Inouye, D. Oliver, and J. Beckwith. 1983. Mutations that alter the signal sequence of alkaline phosphatase in *Escherichia coli* . J. Bacteriol. **154**: 366-374.

Michalek, M., C. Mold, and E. Bremer. 1988. Inhibition of the alternative pathway of human complement by structural analogues of sialic acid. J. Immunol. **140**: 1588-1594.

Miller, V.L., and J.J. Mekalanos. 1988. A novel suicide vector and its use in construction of insertion mutations: osmoregulation of outer membrane proteins and virulence determinants in *Vibrio cholerae* requires *toxR* . J. Bacteriol. **170**: 2575-2583.

Morona, R., L. van den Bosch, P.A. Manning. 1995. Molecular, genetic and topological characterisation of O-antigen chain length regulation in *Shigella flexneri* . J. Bacteriol. **177**: 1059-1068.

Morona, R., M. Mavris, A. Fallarino, and P.A. Manning. 1994. Characterization of the *rfc* region of *Shigella flexneri* . J. Bacteriol. **176**: 733-747.

Moxon, E.R., and R. Rappouli. 1990. Modern vaccines: *Haemophilus influenzae* and whooping cough. Lancet **335**: 1324-1329.

Moxon, E.R., and S.J. Kroll. 1990. The role of bacterial polysaccharide capsules as virulence factors. Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol. **150**: 65-85.

Muller, P., M. Keller, M. Weng, J. Quandt, W. Arnold, and A. Puhler. 1993. Genetic analysis of the *Rhizobium meliloti exoYFQ* operon. ExoY is homologous to sugar transferases and ExoQ represents a transmembrane protein. Mol. Plant-Microbe Interact. **6**: 55-65.

Munson, R.S.,Jr., N.S. Rasmussen, and M.J. Osborn. 1978. Biosynthesis of lipid A. Enzymatic incorporation of 3-deoxy-D-mannooctulosonate into a precursor of lipid A in *Salmonella typhimurium* . J. Biol. Chem. **253**: 1503-1511.

Murray, N., W. Brammar, and K. Murray. 1977. Lambdoid phages that simplify the recovery of *in vitro* recombinants. Mol. Gen. Genet. **150**: 53-61.

Newton, S.M.C., P.E. Klebba, V. Michel, M. Hofnung, and A. Charbit. 1996. Topology of the membrane protein LamB by epitope tagging and a comparison with the X-ray model. J. Bacteriol. **178**: 3447-3456.

Niemann, H., A. Birch-Andersen, B. Kjems, B. Mansa, and S. Stirm. 1976. Streptococcal bacteriophage 12/12 borne hyaluronidase and its characterisation as a lyase (EC 4.2.99.1) by means of streptococcal hyaluronan and purified bacteriophage suspensions. Acta Pathol. Microbiol. Scand. B**84**: 145-153.

Nilsson, I.M., and G. von Heijne. 1990. Fine-tuning the topology of a polytopic membrane protein: role of positively and negatively charged residues. Cell **62**: 1135-1141.

Nimmich, W., E. Straube, G. Naumann, and E. Budde. 1981. Detection of rough *Escherichia coli* K1 strains using K1 specific phages. FEMS Microbiol. Lett. **10**: 353-356.

Noel, K. 1992. Rhizobial polysaccharides required for symbiosis with legumes. In: D. Verma (ed) Molecular signals in plant-microbe interaction, CRC Press, BocaRaton, pp. 341-357.

Nussenzweig, V. and R. Melton. 1981. Human C4 binding protein (C4bp). Methods Enzymol. **80**: 124-133.

Ophir, T., and D. Gutnick. 1994. A role for exopolysaccharides in the protection of microorganisms from desication. Appl. Environ. Microbiol. **60**: 740-745.

Ørskov, F., and I. Ørskov, A. Sutton, R. Schneerson, W. Lin, W. Egan, G. Hoff, and J. Robbins. 1979. Form variation in *Escherichia coli* K1: determined by *O* -acetylation of the capsular polysaccharide. J. Exp. Med. **149**: 669-685.

Ørskov, F., and I. Ørskov. 1990. The serology of capsular antigens. Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol. **150**: 44-63.

Ørskov, F., and I. Ørskov. 1992. *Escherichia coli* serotyping and disease in man and animals. Can. J. Microbiol. **38**: 699-704.

Ørskov, F., V. Sharma, and I. Ørskov. 1984. Influence of growth temperature on the development of *Escherichia coli* polysaccharide K antigens. J. Gen. Microbiol. **130**: 2681-2684.

Ørskov, I., F. Ørskov, B. Jann, and K. Jann. 1977. Serology, chemistry and genetics of O and K antigens of *Escherichia coli* . Bacteriol. Rev. **41**: 667-710.

Ørskov, I., V. Sharma, and F. Ørskov. 1976. Genetic mapping of the K1 and K5 antigens (L) of *Escherichia coli* . Acta Pathol. Microbiol. Scand. Sect. B. **84**: 125-131.

Parolis, H., L.A.S. Parolis, and G.G.S. Dutton. 1988. Preparation of branched hexasaccharides by the action of a viral lyase on *Klebsiella* K14 polysaccharide. Carbohydr. Res. **182**: 127-134.

Pavelka, M., L. Wright, and R. Silver. 1991. Identification of two genes *kpsM* and *kpsT* , in region 3 of the polysialic acid gene cluster of *Escherichia coli* K1. J. Bacteriol. **173**: 4603-4610.

Pavelka, M., S. Hayes, and R. Silver. 1994. Characterisation of the KpsT, the ATP-binding component of the ABC-transporter involved with the export of capsular polysialic acid in *Escherichia coli* K1. J. Biol. Chem. **269**: 20149-20158.

Pazzani, C. 1992. Molecular and genetic analysis of the *Escherichia coli* K5 capsule gene cluster. Ph.D thesis. University of Leicester. UK.

Pazzani, C., A. Smith, D. Bronner, K. Jann, G. Boulnois, and I. Roberts. 1993b. The export of capsular polysaccharides by *Escherichia coli* . In: J. Roth, U. Rutishauser and F. Troy II (eds.) Polysialic acid: from microbes to man. Birkhäuser Verlag. Basel. pp. 113-123.

Pazzani, C., C. Rosenow, G. Boulnois, D. Bronner, K. Jann, and I. Roberts. 1993a. Molecular analysis of region 1 of the *Escherichia coli* K5 capsule gene cluster: a region involved in cell surface expression of capsular polysaccharide. J. Bacteriol. **175**: 5978-5983.

Pearce, R., and I.S. Roberts. 1995. Cloning and analysis of the gene clusters for the production of the *Escherichia coli* K10 and K54 antigens: identification of a new group of *serA* -linked capsule gene clusters. J. Bacteriol. **177**: 3992-3997.

Pelkonen, S., J. Aalto, and J. Finne. 1992. Differential activities of bacteriophage depolymerase on bacterial polysaccharide: binding is essential but degradation is inhibitory in phage infection of K1-defective *Escherichia coli* . J. Bacteriol. **174**: 7757-7761.

Pelkonen, S., J. Pelkonen, and J. Finne. 1989. Common cleavage pattern of polysialic acid by bacteriophage endosialidases of different properties and origin. J. Virol. **63**: 4409-4416.

Peltola, H. 1983. Meningococcal disease: still with us. Rev. Infect. Dis. **5**: 71-91.

Peltola, H., H. Käyhty, A. Sivonen, and P.H. Mäkelä. 1977. *Haemophilus influenzae* type b capsular polysaccharide vaccine in children: a double blind field study of 10000 children 3 months to 5 years of age in Finland. Pediatrics **60**: 730-737.

Petit, C., G. Rigg, C. Pazzani, A. Smith, V. Sieberth, M. Stevens, G. Boulnois, K. Jann, and I. Roberts. 1995. Region 2 of the *Escherichia coli* K5

capsule gene cluster encoding proteins for the biosynthesis of the K5 polysaccharide. Mol. Microbiol. **17**: 611-620.

Petrie, G.F. 1932. A specific precipitin reaction associated with the growth on agar plates of meningococcus, pneumococcus and B-dysenteriae (Shiga). Br. J. Exp. Pathol. **13**: 993-996.

Petter, J.G., and E. R. Vimr. 1993. Complete nucleotide sequence of the bacteriophage K1F tail gene encoding endo-N-acylneuraminidase (endo-N) and comparison to an endo-N-homolog in bacteriophage PK1E. J. Bacteriol. **175**: 4354-4363.

Pickard, D., M. Roberts, D. Maskell, D. Hone, M. Levine, G. Dougan, and S. Chatfield. 1994. Characterisation of defined *ompR* mutants of *Salmonella typhi* : *ompR* is involved in the regulation of Vi polysaccharide expression. Infect. Immun. **62**: 3984-3993.

Pigeon, R., and R. Silver. 1994. Topological and mutational analysis of KpsM, the hydrophobic component of the ABC-transporter involved in the export of polysialic acid in *Escherichia coli* K1. Mol. Microbiol. **24**: 871-881.

Pike, L., and O. Wyss. 1975. Isolation and characterization of phage-resistant strains of *Azotobacter vinelandii* . Biochem. J. **89**: 182-186.

Prehm, P., and K. Jann. 1976. Enzymatic action of coliphage Ω8 and its possible role in infection. J. Virol. **19**: 940-949.

Prehm, P., B. Jann, K. Jann, G. Schmidt, and S. Stirm. 1976. A bacteriophage T3 and T4 receptor region within the cell wall lipopolysaccharide of *Escherichia coli* B. J. Mol. Biol. **101**: 277-281.

Prikas, H.S., P. Campbell, D.S. Feingold, I. Jacobson, J.W. Jensen, U. Lindahl, and L. Roden. 1980. Biosynthesis of heparin. Hydrgen exchange at carbon 5 of the glycuronosyl residues. Biochem. **19**: 495-500.

Prinz, W.A., and J. Beckwith. 1994. Gene fusion analysis of membrane protein topology: a direct comparison of alkaline phosphatase and β-lactamase fusions. J. Bacteriol. **176**: 6410-6413.

Pugsley, A.P. 1993. The complete general secretory pathway in Gram-negative bacteria. Microbiol. Rev. **57**: 50-108.

Pugsley, A.P., and M. Schwartz. 1985. Export and secretion of proteins by bacteria. FEMS Microbiol. Rev. **32**: 3-38.

Ravenscroft, N., A.M. Stephen, and E.H. Merifield. 1987. Bacteriophage associated lyase activity against *Klebsiella* K64 capsular polysaccharide. Carbohydr. Res. **167**: 257-267.

Reeves, P.J., P. Douglas, and G.P. Salmond. 1994. Beta-lactamase topology probe analysis of the OutO NMePhe peptidase, and six other Out protein components of the *Erwinia carotovora* general secretion pathway apparatus. Mol Microbiol. **12**: 445-457.

Reizer, J., A. Reizer, and M. Saier. 1992. A new subfamily of bacterial ABC-type transport systems catalysing the export of drugs and carbohydrates. Protein Sci. **1**: 1232-1236.

Reske, K., B. Wallenfels, and K. Jann. 1973. Enzymatic degradation of O antigenic lipopolysaccharides by coliphage Ω8. Eur. J. Biochem.**36**: 167-171.

Reuber, T.L., and G.C. Walker. 1993. Biosynthesis of succinoglycan, a symbiotically important exopolysaccharide of *Rhizobium meliloti* . Cell **74**: 269-280.

Rick, P.D., G.L. Hubbard, and K. Barr. 1994. Role of the *rfe* gene in the synthesis of the O8 antigen in *Escherichia coli* K-12. J. Bacteriol. **176**: 2877-2884.

Robbins, J. 1978. Vaccines for the prevention of encapsulated bacterial diseases: current status, problems and prospects for the future. Immunochem. **15**: 839-854.

Robbins, J., and R. Schneerson. 1990. Polysaccharide-protein conjugates: a new generation of vaccines. J. Infect. Dis. **161**: 821-832.

Robbins, J.B., G.H. McCracken, E.C. Gotschlich, I. Ørskov, and L.A. Hanson. 1974. *Escherichia coli* K1 capsular polysaccharide associated with neonatal meningitis. New Engl. J. Med. **290**: 267-271.

Roberson, E., and M. Firestone. 1992. Relationship betwwen desiccation and exopolysaccharide production in soil *Pseudomonas* sp. Appl. Environ. Microbiol. **58**: 1284-1291.

Roberts, I. 1995. Bacterial polysaccharides in sickness and in health. Microbiol. **141**: 2023-2031.

Roberts, I., R. Mountford, N. High, D. Bitter-Suermann, K. Jann, K. Timmis, and G. Boulnois. 1986. Molecular cloning and analysis of genes for the production of the K5, K7, K12 and K92 capsular polysaccharides in *Escherichia coli* . J. Bacteriol. **170**: 1305-1310.

Roberts, I.S. 1996. The biochemistry and genetics of capsular polysaccharide production in bacteria. Annu. Rev. Microbiol. **50**: 285-315.

Roberts, I.S., F. Saunders, and G. Boulnois. 1989. Bacterial capsules and interactions with complement and phagocytes. Biochem. Soc. Trans. **17**: 462-464.

Rodriguez, M.L., B. Jann, and K. Jann. 1988. Structural and serological characteristics of the capsular K4 antigen of *Escherichia coli* O5:K4:H4, a fructose containing polysaccharide with a chondroitin backbone. Eur. J. Biochem. **177**: 117-124.

Rodriguez, M.L., B. Jann, and K. Jann. 1989. Structure and properties of the capsular K11 antigen of *Escherichia coli* O13:K11:H11, a fructose containing polysaccharide with a diglucosylphosphate backbone. Carbohydr. Res. **196**: 101-109.

Roof, S.K., J.D. Allard, K.P. Bertrand, and K. Postle. 1991. Analysis of *Escherichia coli* TonB membrane topology by use of PhoA fusions. J. Bacteriol. **173**: 5554-5557.

Rosenow, C., F. Esumeh, I. Roberts, and K. Jann. 1995a. Characterisation and localisation of the KpsE protein of *Escherichia coli* K5, which is involved in polysaccharide export. J. Bacteriol. **177**: 1137-1143.

Rosenow, C., I. Roberts, and K. Jann. 1995b. Isolation from recombinant *Escherichia coli* and characterisation of CMP-Kdo synthetase, involved in the expression of the capsular K5 polysaccharide (K-CKS). FEMS Microbiol. Lett. **125**: 159-164.

Rost, B., C. Sander, and R. Schneider. 1994. PHD-a mail server for protein secondary structure prediction. CABIOS **10**: 53-60.

Roth, J., I. Blaha, D. Bitter-Suermann, and P.U. Heitz. 1988. Blastemal cells of nephroblastomatosis complex share an onco-developmental antigen with embryonic kidney and Wilms' tumor. An immunohistochemical study on polysialic acid distribution. Am. J. Pathol.**133**: 596-608.

Russo, T., and G. Singh. 1993. An extraintestinal, pathogenic isolate of *Escherichia coli* (O4:K54:H5) can produce a group 1 capsule which is divergently regulated from its constitutively expressed group 2, K54 capsular polysaccharide. J. Bacteriol. **175**: 7617-7623.

Saiki, R.K., U.B. Gyllensten, and H. Erlich. 1988. The polymerase chain reaction in genome analysis. In: K.E Davies (ed.) Polymerase chain reaction, IRL Press, Oxford.

Saito, H., and K. Miura. 1963. Preparation of transforming deoxyribonucliec acid by phenol treatment. Biochimica *et* Biophysica Acta **72**: 619-629.

Sanger, F., S. Nicklen, and A. Coulson. 1977. DNA sequencing with chain terminating inhibitors. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA **74**: 5463-5467

Schatz, P.J., and J. Beckwith. 1990. Genetic analysis of protein export in *Escherichia coli* . Annu. Rev. Genet. **24**: 215-248.

Schatz, P.J., and J. Beckwith. 1990. Genetic anlysis of protein export in *Escherichia coli* . Annu. Rev. Genet. **24**: 215-248.

Schatz, P.J., K.L. Bleker, K.M. Ottemann, T. J. Silhavy, and J. Beckwith. 1991. One of the three transmembrane stretches is sufficient for the functioning of the SecE protein, a membrane component of the *E. coli* secretion machinery. EMBO J. **10**: 1749-1757.

Schmidt, A., and K. Jann. 1982. Phospholipid substitution of capsular (K) polysaccharide antigens from *Escherichia coli* causing extraintestinal infections. FEMS Microbiol. Lett. **14**: 69-74.

Schmidt, A., B. Jann, K. Jann, I. Ørskov, and F. Ørskov. 1977. Genetic determinants of the synthesis of the polysaccharide capsular antigen K27(A) of *Escherichia coli* . J. Gen. Microbiol. **100**: 355-361.

Schmidt, M.G., E.E. Rollo, J. Grodberg, and D.B. Oliver. 1988. Nucleotide sequence of the *secA* gene and *secA* (Ts) mutations preventing protein export in *Escherichia coli* . J. Bacteriol.**170**: 3404-3414.

Schnaitman, C., and J. Klena. 1993. Genetics of lipopolysaccharide biosynthesis in enteric bacteria. Microbiol. Rev. **57**: 655-682.

Schulein, R., I. Gentschev, H.J. Mollenkopf, and W. Goebel. 1992. A topological model for the haemolysin translocator protein HlyD. Mol. Gen. Genet. **234**: 155-163.

Sieberth, V. 1994. Identifizierung der UDP-glucose dehydrogenase und glycosyltransferasen der K5-kapselbiosynnthese. Ph.D thesis. University of Freiburg, Germany.

Sieberth, V., B. Jann, and K. Jann. 1993. Structure of the K10 capsular antigen from*Escherichia coli* O11:K10:H10, a polysaccharide containing 4,6-dideoxy-4-manonylamino-D-glucose. Carbohydr. Res. **246**: 219-228.

Sieberth, V., G. Rigg, I. Roberts, and K. Jann. 1995. Expression and characterisation of UDPGlc dehydrogenase (KfiD) which is encoded in the type-specific region 2 of the *Escherichia coli* K5 capsule genes. J. Bacteriol. **177**: 4562-4565.

Silver, R., C. Finn, W. Vann, W. Aaronson, R. Schneerson, P. Kretschner, and C. Garon. 1981. Molecular cloning of the K1 capsular polysaccharide genes of *E. coli* . Nature **289**: 696-698.

Silver, R., P. Annunziato, M. Pavelka, R. Pigeon, L. Wright, D. Wunder. 1993. Genetic and molecular analyses of the polysialic acid gene cluster of *Escherichia coli* K1. In: J. Roth, U. Rutishauser and F. Troy II (eds.) Polysialic acid: from microbes to man. Birkhäuser Verlag, Basel. pp. 59-72.

Silver, R., W. Aaronson, and W. Vann. 1984. Genetic and molecular analyses of *Escherichia coli* K1 antigen genes. J. Bacteriol. **157**: 568-575.

Silver, R.P., and E.R. Vimr. 1990. Polysialic acid capsule of *Escherichia coli* K1. In: B. Iglewski and V. Miller (eds.), The bacterial, vol XI. Molecular basis of bacterial pathogenesis. Academic Press Inc., New York, pp. 39-60.

Simon, R., U. Priefer, and A. Pühler. 1983. A broad host range mobilization system for *in vivo* genetic engineering: transposon mutagenesis in gram-negative bacteria. Biotechnol. **1**: 784-791.

Simon, S.M., and G. Blobel. 1992. Signal peptides open protein-conducting channels in *E. coli* . Cell **69**: 677-684.

Simpson, D.A., T.C. Hammarton, and I.S. Roberts. Transcriptional organisation and regulation of expression of region 1 of the *Escherichia coli* K5 capsule gene cluster. J. Bacteriol. **178**: 6466-6474.

Skvirsky, R.C., S. Reginald, and X. Shen. 1995. Topology analysis of the colicin V export protein CvaA in *Escherichia coli* . J. Bacteriol. **177**: 6153-6159.

Smith, A., G. Boulnois, and I. Roberts. 1990. Molecular analysis of the *Escherichia coli* K5 *kps* locus: identification and characterisation of an inner-membrane capsular polysaccharide transport system. Mol. Microbiol. **4**: 1863-1869.

Sorensen, U., J. Henrichsen, and H.C. Chen. 1990. Covalent linkage between the capsular polysaccharide and cell wall peptidoglycan of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* revealed by immunochemical methods. Microbial. Pathogenesis **8**: 325-334.

Southern, E. 1975. Detection of specific sequences among DNA fragments separated by gel electrophoresis. J. Mol. Biol. **98**: 503-517.

Stanfield, S.W., L. Ielpi, D. O'Brochta, D.R. Helinski, and G.S. Ditta. 1988. The *ndvA* gene product of *Rhizobium meliloti* is required for β-(1-2)glucan production and has homology to the ATP-binding export protein HlyB. J. Bacteriol. **170**: 3523-3530.

Stark, M.J.R. 1987. Multicopy expression vectors carrying the *lac* repressor gene for high-level expression of genes in *Escherichia coli* . Gene **51**: 255-267.

Stark, M.J.R. 1987. Multicopy expression vectors carrying the *lac* repressor gene for high-level expression of genes in *Escherichia coli* . Gene **51**: 255-267.

Steenbergen, S., T. Wrona, and E. Vimr. 1992. Functional analysis of the sialyltransferase complexes in *Escherichia coli* K1 and K92. J. Bacteriol. **174**: 1099-1108.

Stevens, M.P. 1995. Regulation of *Escherichia coli* K5 capsular polysaccharide expression. Ph.D thesis. University of Leicester. UK.

Stevens, M.P., P. Hänfling, B. Jann, K. Jann, and I.S. Roberts. 1995. Regulation of *Escherichia coli* K5 capsular polysaccharide expression: Evidence for involvement of RfaH in the expression of group II capsules. FEMS Microbiol. Lett. **124**: 93-98.

Stevens, P., S.N.H. Huang, W.D. Welch, and L.S. Young. 1978. Restricted complement activation by *Escherichia coli* with the K1-capsular serotype: a possible role in pathogenicity. J. Immunol. **121**: 2174-2180.

Stirm, S. 1968. *Escherichia coli* bacteriophages. I. Isolation and introductory characterisation of five *Escherichia coli* K bacteriophages. J. Virol. **2**: 1107-1114.

Stirm, S. and E. Freund-Mölbert. 1971. *Escherichia coli* capsule bacteriophages. II. Morphology. J. Virol. **8**: 330-342.

Sutherland, I. 1985. Biosynthesis and composition of Gram negative bacterial extracellular and wall polysaccharides. Ann. Rev. Microbiol. **39**: 243-270.

Sutherland, I.W. 1972. Microbial exopolysaccharides. Adv. Microbial Physiol. **8**: 143-213.

Sutherland, I.W. 1977. Bacterial exopolysaccharides-their nature and production. In: Sutherland, I.W. (ed) Surface carbohydrates of the prokaryotic cell. Academic Press Inc. (London) Ltd. pp. 27-96.

Sutherland, I.W. 1995. Polysaccharide lyases. FEMS Microbiol. Rev. **16**: 323-347.

Sutherland, I.W., K. Jann, and B. Jann. 1970. The isolation of O-acetylated fragments from the K antigen of *Escherichia coli* O8:K27(A):H by the action of phage-induced enzymes from *Klebsiella aerogenes* . Eur. J. Biochem. **12**: 285-288.

Tabor, S., and C.C. Richardson. 1985. A bacteriophage T7 RNA polymerase/promoter system for controlled exclusive expression of specific genes. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA **82**: 1074-1078.

Tomlinson, S., and P.W. Taylor. 1985. Neuraminidase associated with coliphage E that specifically depolymerizes the *Escherichia coli* K1 capsular polysaccharide. J. Virol. **55**: 374-378.

Towbin, H., T. Staehelin, and J. Gordon. 1979. Electrophoretic transfer of proteins from polyacrylamide gels to nitrocellulose filters: procedure and some applications. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA **76**: 4350-4354.

Traxler, B., C. Lee, D. Boyd, and J. Beckwith. 1992. The dynamics of assembly of a cytoplasmic membrane protein in *Escherichia coli* . J. Biol. Chem. **267**: 5339-5345.

Troy, F.A., F.E. Frerman, and E.C. Heath. 1971. The biosynthesis of capsular polysaccharide of *Aerobacter aerogenes* . J. Biol. Chem. **246**: 118-133.

Troy, F.A., II. 1992. Polysialylation: from bacteria to brains. Glycobiol. **2**: 5-23.

Uhland, K., R. Ehrle, T. Zander, and M. Ehrmann. 1994. Requirements for translocation of periplasmic domains in polytopic membrane proteins. J. Bacteriol. **176**: 4565-4571.

Ulbrandt, N.D., E. London, and D.B. Oliver. 1992. Deep penetration of a portion of *Escherichia coli* SecA protein into model membranes is promoted by anionic phospholipids and by partial unfolding. J. Biol. Chem. **267**: 15184-15192.

Van Eldere, J., L. Brophy, B. Loynds, P. Celis, I. Hancock, S. Carman, J. Kroll, E. Moxon. 1995. Region II of the *Haemophilus influenzae* type b capsulation locus is involved in serotype-specific polysaccharide biosynthesis. Mol. Microbiol. **15**: 107-118.

Vann, W., M. Schmidt, B. Jann, and K. Jann. 1981. The structure of the capsular polysaccharide (K5 antigen) of urinary tract infective *Escherichia coli* O10:K5:H4. A polymer similar to desulfo-heparin. Eur. J. Biochem. **116**: 359-364.

Vann, W., T. Soderstrom, W. Egan, F.P. Tsui, R. Schneerson, I. Ørskov, and F. Ørskov. 1983. Serological, chemical, and structural analyses of the *Escherichia coli* cross-reactive capsular polysaccharides K13, K20 and K23. Infect. Immun.**39**: 623-629.

Vasse, J.M., F.B. Dazzo, and G.L. Truchet. 1984. Re-examination of capsule development and lectin-binding sites on *Rhizobium japonicum* 311b110 by the glutaraldehyde/ruthenium red/uranyl acetate staining method. J. Gen. Microbiol. **130**: 3037-3047.

Vianney, A., T.M. Lewin, W.F. Beyer,Jr., J.C. Lazzaroni, R. Portalier, and R.E. Webster. 1994. Membrane topology and mutational analysis of the TolQ protein of *Escherichia coli* required for the uptake of macromolecules and cell envelope integrity. J. Bacteriol. **176**: 822-829.

Vimr, E. 1991. Map position and genome organisation of the *kps* cluster for polysialic acid biosynthesis in *Escherichia coli* K1. J. Bacteriol. **173**: 1335-1338.

Vimr, E., W. Aaronson, and R. Silver. 1989. Genetic analysis of chromosomal mutations in the polysialic gene cluster of *Escherichia coli* K1. J. Bacteriol. **171**: 1106-1117.

Vimr, E.R., R.D. McCoy, H.F. Vollger, N.C. Wilkison, and F.A. Troy. 1984. Use of prokaryotic-derived probes to identify poly(sialic acid) in neonatal neuromal membranes. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA **81**: 1971-1975.

Virji, M., K. Makepeace, and E.R. Moxon. 1994. Distinct mechanisms of interactions of Opc-expressing meningococci at apical and basolateral surfaces of human endothelial cells; the role of inegrins in apical interactions. Mol. Microbiol. **14**: 173-184.

von Heijne, G. 1984. How signal sequences maintain cleavage specificity. J. Mol. Biol. **173**: 243-251.

von Heijne, G. 1986a. A new method for predicting signal sequence cleavage sites. Nucliec Acids Res. **14**: 4683-4690.

von Heijne, G. 1986b. The distribution of positively charged residues in bacterial inner membrane proteins correlates with the trans-membrane topology. EMBO J. **5**: 3021-3027.

von Heijne, G. 1992. Membrane protein structure prediction. Hydrophobicity analysis and the positive-inside rule. J. Mol. Biol. **225**: 487-494.

von Heijne, G., and I. Gavel. 1988. Topogenic signals in integral membrane proteins. Eur. J. Biochem. **174**: 671-678.

Walker, J.E., M. Sarste, M.J. Runswick, and N.J. Gay. 1982. Distantly related sequences in the α- and β-subunits of ATP synthase, myosin, kinases and other ATP-requiring enzymes have a common nucleotide binding fold. EMBO J. **1**: 945-951.

Wandersman, C. 1989. Secretion, processing and activation of bacterial extracellular proteases. Mol. Microbiol. **3**: 1825-1831.

Wandersman, C. 1992. Secretion across the bacterial outer membrane. Trends Genet. **8**: 317-322.

Wandersman, C., and P. Delepelaire. 1990. TolC, an *Escherichia coli* outer membrane protein required for hemolysin secretion. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA **87**: 4776-4780.

Wang, L., and P.R. Reeves. 1994. Involvement of the galactosyl-1-phosphate transferase encoded by the *Salmonella enterica rfbP* gene in O-antigen subunit processing. J. Bacteriol. **176**: 4348-4356.

Wang, R., S.J. Seror, M. Blight, J.M. Pratt, J.K. Broome-Smith, and I.B. Holland. 1991. Analysis of the membrane organization of an *Escherichia coli* protein translocator, HlyB, a member of a large family of prokaryote and eukaryote surface transport proteins. J. Mol. Biol. **217**: 441-454.

Watanabe, M., and G. Blobel. 1989. Cytosolic factor purified from *Escherichia coli* is necessary and sufficient for the export of a preprotein and is a hetrotetramer of SecB. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA **86**: 2728-2732.

Whitfield, C. 1995. Biosynthesis of lipopolysaccharide O antigens. Trends Microbiol. **3**: 178-185.

Whitfield, C., and M. Valvano. 1993. Biosynthesis and expression of cell-surface polysaccharides in Gram-negative bacteria. Advances Microb. Physiol. **35**: 135-246.

Whitfield, C., E. Vimr, J. Costerton, and F. Troy. 1984. Protein synthesis is required for *in vivo* activation of polysialic acid synthesis in *E. coli* K1. J. Bacteriol. **159**: 321-328.

Wickner, W., A. Driessen, and F.-U. Hartl. 1991. The enzymology of protein translocation across the *Escherichia coli* plasma membrane. Annu. Rev. Biochem. **60**: 101-124.

Wilkinson, R.G., P. Gemski, Jr., and B.A.D. Stocker. 1972. Non-smooth mutants of *Salmonella typhimurium* : differentiation by phage sensitivity and genetic mapping. J. Gen. Microbiol. **70**: 527-554.

Winkelstein, J.A., J.A. Bocchini Jr., and G. Schiffman. 1976. The role of capsular polysaccharide in the activation of the alternative pathway by the pneumococcus. J. Immunol. **116**: 367-370.

Wunder, D., W. Aaronson, S. Hayes, J. Bliss, and R. Silver. 1994. Nucleotide sequence and mutational analysis of the gene encoding KpsD, a periplasmic protein involved in the transport of polysialic acid in *Escherichia coli* K1. J. Bacteriol. **176**: 4025-4033.

Yamada, M., Y. Yamada, and M. Saier. 1990. Nucleotide sequence and expression of the *gutQ* gene within the glucitol operon of *Escherichia coli* . J. DNA Sequencing Mapp. **1**: 141-145.

Yanisch-Perron, C., J. Vieira, and J. Messing. 1985. Improved M13 phage cloning vectors and host strains: nucleotide sequences of M13mp18 and pUC19 vectors. Gene **33**: 103-119.

Yeung, M., and S. Mattingly. 1986. Covalent linkage of the type- and group-specific antigens to the peptide moiety of peptidoglycan of serotype III of group B *Streptococcus* . Curr. Microbiol. **14**: 205-211.

Zhang, L., A. Al-Hendy, P. Toivanen, and M. Skurnik. 1993. Genetic organization and sequence of the *rfb* gene cluster of *Yersinia enterocolitica* serotype O:3: similarities to the dTDP-L-rhamnose biosynthesis pathway of *Salmonella* and to the bacterial polysaccharide transport systems. Mol. Microbiol. **9**: 309-321.

Zhang, Y., and J.K. Broome-Smith. 1990. Correct insertion of a simple eukaryotic plasma-membrane protein into the cytoplasmic membrane of *Escherichia coli* . Gene **96**: 51-57.

Zorzopulos, J., S. Delong, V. Chapman, and L.M. Kozloff. 1982. Host receptor site for the short tail fibres of bacteriophage T4. Virology **120**: 33-41.